HSK 3 Grammar

Chinese grammar · bilingual edition

Contents

1 Adjectives **3**
- 1.1 Adjective + 极了 (extremely) . . . 3
- 1.2 Doubling adjectives (AA / AABB) . . . 4
- 1.3 Adjective + 地 + Verb (making an adverb) . . . 5
- 1.4 Practice without the models . . . 7
- 1.5 Answers and explanations . . . 9

2 Adverbs **11**
- 2.1 又 + Verb + 了 (again, in the past) . . . 11
- 2.2 一直 (all along, continuously) . . . 12
- 2.3 总是 (always – a habit) . . . 13
- 2.4 终于 (finally, at last) . . . 15
- 2.5 几乎 (nearly, almost) . . . 16
- 2.6 只 (only) . . . 17
- 2.7 Duration + 没 + Verb + 了 (how long you haven't …) . . . 18
- 2.8 Time + 才 (not until – lateness) . . . 20
- 2.9 先 … , 再 … (first …, then …) . . . 21
- 2.10 一边 … 一边 … (doing two things at once) . . . 22
- 2.11 老是 (always – a complaint) . . . 23
- 2.12 才 + Number (only – a small amount) . . . 25
- 2.13 Practice without the models . . . 26
- 2.14 Answers and explanations . . . 33

3 Adverbs with Adjectives **40**
- 3.1 这么 / 那么 + Adjective (so …) . . . 40
- 3.2 A 跟 / 和 B 一样 (the same as) . . . 41
- 3.3 又 … 又 … (both … and …) . . . 42
- 3.4 Subject + 比较 + Adjective (fairly, rather) . . . 44
- 3.5 多 + Adjective + 啊! (how …!) . . . 45
- 3.6 Adjective + 的 + Noun (describing a noun) . . . 46
- 3.7 Practice without the models . . . 48
- 3.8 Answers and explanations . . . 51

4 Conjunctions **55**
- 4.1 A 或者 B (or – in statements) . . . 55
- 4.2 那么 … (then / in that case) . . . 56
- 4.3 跟 + Person + Verb (with someone) . . . 57
- 4.4 A 还是 B? (or – in questions) . . . 59
- 4.5 Practice without the models . . . 60
- 4.6 Answers and explanations . . . 62

5 Nouns **65**

5.1 Time / Verb + 以前 (before …) . . . 65
5.2 以前，… (in the past, …) . . . 66
5.3 刚才 (a moment ago) . . . 67
5.4 Time / Verb + 时 (when …) . . . 69
5.5 以后 (after / in the future) . . . 70
5.6 … ，后来 … (afterwards / later – past) . . . 71
5.7 Practice without the models . . . 72
5.8 Answers and explanations . . . 76

6 Numbers **80**
6.1 Approximating with sequential numbers . . . 80
6.2 Big numbers: 万 / 亿 . . . 81
6.3 Times to the minute (点 … 分) . . . 82
6.4 Telling the hour (Number + 点) . . . 83
6.5 Practice without the models . . . 85
6.6 Answers and explanations . . . 88

7 Particles **91**
7.1 Verb + 着 (ongoing state) . . . 91
7.2 Sentence-final 了 (change of state) . . . 92
7.3 Questions with 呢 (and you? / where?) . . . 93
7.4 的 / 得 / 地 (the three “de”) . . . 95
7.5 Practice without the models . . . 96
7.6 Answers and explanations . . . 99

8 Prepositions **102**
8.1 关于 + Topic (about / regarding) . . . 102
8.2 直到 … ，… 才 … (all the way until) . . . 103
8.3 向 + Direction / Person + Verb (towards) . . . 104
8.4 Practice without the models . . . 105
8.5 Answers and explanations . . . 108

9 Verbs **110**
9.1 看起来 (looks / seems) . . . 110
9.2 没 (有) comparisons (not as … as) . . . 111
9.3 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (make / let / ask someone do) . . . 112
9.4 经过 (after going through) . . . 114
9.5 Practice without the models . . . 115
9.6 Answers and explanations . . . 118

10 Auxiliary verbs **121**
10.1 应该 / 该 (should, ought to) . . . 121
10.2 Practice without the models . . . 122
10.3 Answers and explanations . . . 123

11 Verb phrases **124**
11.1 难 + Verb (unpleasant to …) . . . 124
11.2 Verb + 了 + Duration (did for a length of time) . . . 125
11.3 Verb + 了 + Duration + 了 (have been …-ing) . . . 126
11.4 没办法 + Verb (no way to / can't) . . . 128
11.5 Verb reduplication (do a bit / give it a try) . . . 129
11.6 很 + Verb (feeling verbs with 很) . . . 130
11.7 Practice without the models . . . 132
11.8 Answers and explanations . . . 135

12 Complements **139**
12.1 Direction complement 来 / 去 (toward / away) . . . 139
12.2 Potential complement 得 / 不 (can / can't do it) . . . 140
12.3 Verb + 下去 (keep …-ing) . . . 141
12.4 Result complements 好 / 完 / 错 (how it turned out) . . . 143
12.5 Practice without the models . . . 144
12.6 Answers and explanations . . . 147

13 Conditional Statements **150**
13.1 只要 … ， 就 … (as long as) . . . 150
13.2 … ， 才 … (only then / only after) . . . 151
13.3 只有 … ， 才 … (only if) . . . 152
13.4 Practice without the models . . . 153
13.5 Answers and explanations . . . 156

14 Noun Phrases **158**
14.1 有的 (some / some…, others…) . . . 158
14.2 Practice without the models . . . 159
14.3 Answers and explanations . . . 160

15 Numbers and Measure Words **161**
15.1 半 (half / and a half) . . . 161
15.2 Practice without the models . . . 162
15.3 Answers and explanations . . . 163

16 Sentence Patterns **164**
16.1 一 … 也 / 都 … 不 / 没 (not even one) . . . 164
16.2 越 … 越 … (the more …, the more …) . . . 165
16.3 把 sentences (do something to the object) . . . 166
16.4 被 sentences (the passive) . . . 168
16.5 Practice without the models . . . 169
16.6 Answers and explanations . . . 171

17 Basic/Simple Sentence Patterns **174**

17.1 Place + Verb + 着 + Noun (existential) . . . 174
17.2 想 + QW + 就 + QW (whatever you like) . . . 175
17.3 Question Word + 都 (every / all) . . . 176
17.4 越来越 (more and more) . . . 177
17.5 Question words as "some- / any-" . . . 179
17.6 为了 (in order to / for the sake of) . . . 180
17.7 Practice without the models . . . 182
17.8 Answers and explanations . . . 185

18 Comparison Patterns **189**
18.1 跟 … 比 (起来) (compared with …) . . . 189
18.2 比 … 更 / 还 (even more than) . . . 190
18.3 比 … Adj + 多了 (much more than) . . . 191
18.4 N1 + 有 + N2 + Adj (as … as) . . . 192
18.5 Practice without the models . . . 194
18.6 Answers and explanations . . . 197

19 Complex Sentence Patterns **200**
19.1 除了 … 都 / 还 (except / besides) . . . 200
19.2 如果 … 的话 (if …) . . . 201
19.3 如果 … ， 就 … (if …, then …) . . . 202
19.4 不但 … ， 而且 … (not only … but also) . . . 203
19.5 Practice without the models . . . 205
19.6 Answers and explanations . . . 207

20 Comparing similar adverbs **210**
20.1 才 vs 就 (late vs early) . . . 210
20.2 刚 vs 刚才 (just now: adverb vs time-word) . . . 211
20.3 有点 vs 一点 (a bit too… vs a little …er) . . . 213
20.4 再 vs 又 (again: future vs past) . . . 214
20.5 Practice without the models . . . 215
20.6 Answers and explanations . . . 218

21 Comparing similar conjunctions **221**
21.1 还是 vs 或者 (or: question vs statement) . . . 221
21.2 Practice without the models . . . 222
21.3 Answers and explanations . . . 224

22 Comparing similar time words **225**
22.1 以后 vs 然后 vs 后来 (then / after) . . . 225
22.2 Practice without the models . . . 226
22.3 Answers and explanations . . . 228

1 Adjectives

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

1.1 ■ Adjective + 极了 (extremely)

1.1.1 很好吃 is not enough

- Your friend has cooked for you, and the food is far better than "quite good".
- **这个菜好吃极了！** – "This dish is absolutely delicious!" 极了 pushes the adjective to its top degree.

1.1.2 Put 极了 after the adjective

- **Subject + Adjective + 极了**: the adjective comes first and 极了 closes the clause.
- The adjective stands alone in front of 极了, so 很 and 非常 drop out: 好极了, 冷极了, 忙极了.

今天热极了。
jīn tiān rè jí le
Word guide: 今天 – today; 热 – hot; 极了 – extremely.



1.1.3 Feelings work the same way

- Feeling words take 极了 too: **听到这个消息，我高兴极了。** – "When I heard the news, I was overjoyed."
- A few feeling verbs also accept it: **我喜欢极了。** – "I absolutely love it."

考完以后，我累极了。
kǎo wán yǐ hòu wǒ lèi jí le
Word guide: 考完 – finish the exam; 以后 – after; 我 – I; 累 – tired; 极了 – extremely.

1.1.4 Two places it goes wrong

- No 很 or 非常 in front: say 好极了, not 很好极了, because 极了 already carries the degree.
- 极了 never comes before the adjective: 冷极了, not 极了冷.

1.1.5 很 + Adj, 非常 + Adj and Adj + 极了

- 很 + Adj is the neutral description (天气很好); 非常 + Adj is strong and fits writing as well as speech.
- Adj + 极了 is spoken and exclamatory, often a reaction: A: 外面冷吗? B: 冷极了!

外面冷吗? 冷极了!
wài miàn lěng ma lěng jí le
Word guide: 外面 – outside; 冷 – cold; 冷 – cold; 极了 – extremely.

1.1.6 Recap

- **Adjective + 极了** = extremely, absolutely; it ends the clause.
- No 很 or 非常 before it. Use it to react with feeling, mostly in speech.

Practise this pattern step by step.

1.2 ■ Doubling adjectives (AA / AABB)

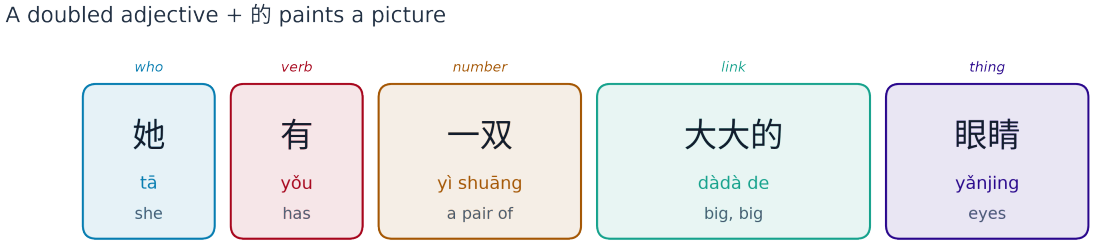
1.2.1 Describing a picture in a lively way

- You are describing a child's drawing: big eyes, a round face, a very tidy room.
- **她有一双大大的眼睛。** – "She has big, big eyes." Doubling the adjective paints a vivid picture.

1.2.2 One-syllable adjectives: AA

- A one-syllable adjective repeats as **AA**, usually followed by 的 before a noun: 大大的眼睛, 红红的苹果.
- The second syllable is often said lightly; the tone of the first stays clear.

她有一双大大的眼睛。
tā yǒu yì shuāng dà dà de yǎn jing
Word guide: 她 – she; 有 – has; 一双 – a pair of; 大大的 – big, big; 眼睛 – eyes.



1.2.3 Two-syllable adjectives: AABB

- A two-syllable adjective AB doubles each syllable: 干净 → **干干净净**, 高兴 → **高高兴兴**, 清楚 → **清清楚楚**.
- The doubled form can describe a noun or an action: 房间干干净净的 / 他高高兴兴地回家了。

他把房间打扫得干干净净的。
tā bǎ fáng jiān dǎ sǎo de gān gān jìng jìng de
Word guide: 他 – he; 房间 – room; 打扫 – cleaned; 干干净净 – spotlessly clean.

1.2.4 What doubling already says

- No 很 or 非常 in front: 大大的眼睛, not 很大大的眼睛, because doubling already adds the degree.
- The common adjectives taught here use AABB, as in 干干净净. Some other adjectives allow ABAB, so learn each adjective and its accepted reduplicated form.

1.2.5 Doubled adjectives describe, they do not compare

- Doubled forms describe how something looks or feels; they do not take 不: say 不干净, not 不干干净净.
- Many are fixed habits of speech. Learn common ones as chunks: 慢慢地走, 好好地休息, 高高兴兴地玩。

你好好休息吧。
nǐ hǎo hǎo xiū xi ba
Word guide: 你 – you; 好好 – properly; 休息 – rest.

1.2.6 Recap

- One syllable: **AA(的)** – 大大的, 红红的. Two syllables: **AABB** – 干干净净, 高高兴兴.
- Doubling adds vividness and degree, so drop 很 and do not negate it with 不.

Practise this pattern step by step.

1.3 ■ Adjective + 地 + Verb (making an adverb)

1.3.1 How did they do it?

- Your grandmother crosses the busy road carefully; your little brother does his homework seriously for once.
- **奶奶慢慢地走过马路。** – "Grandma slowly walks across the road." 地 turns a description into how the action is done.

1.3.2 Adjective + 地 + Verb

- **Subject + Adjective + 地 + Verb**: the description comes before the verb and 地 (de) links them.

- Two-syllable adjectives are the most common: 认真地学习, 高兴地说, 安静地看书.

他认真地学习。
tā rèn zhēn de xué xí
Word guide: 他 – he; 认真 – seriously; 学习 – study.



1.3.3 Doubled and phrase descriptions

- Doubled adjectives often take 地: **孩子们高高兴兴地回家了。** – "The children went home happily."
- A short phrase works too: 很快地吃完了饭, 非常小心地打开盒子.

孩子们高高兴兴地回家了。
hái zi men gāo gāo xìng xìng de huí jiā le
Word guide: 孩子们 – the children; 高高兴兴 – happily; 回家 – go home.

1.3.4 Keep the order and the character straight

- 地 comes before the verb: 认真地学习. After the verb you need 得: 他学得很认真.
- Write 地, not 的, between the description and the verb; both are read de.

1.3.5 地 before the verb, 得 after it

- 他认真地写作业 tells how he does it: carefully, while doing it.
- 他写得很认真 comments on the result or manner after the fact: "He writes very carefully."

他写得很认真。
tā xiě de hěn rèn zhēn
Word guide: 他 – he; 写 – writes; 很 – very; 认真 – carefully.

1.3.6 Recap

- **Adjective + 地 + Verb** = do something in that way: 慢慢地走, 认真地学习.
- 地 sits before the verb; 得 follows the verb. Keep 的 for nouns.

Practise this pattern step by step.

1.4 ■ Practice without the models

1.4.1 Adjective + 极了 (extremely)

0101.1 Complete the reaction to a great film: 这个电影好看 ……!

0101.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 天气很好极了。
- B. 天气非常好极了。
- C. 天气极了好。
- D. 天气好极了。

0101.3 A friend asks 外面冷吗? Replying 冷极了! is natural spoken Chinese.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0101.4 Build: "I was overjoyed when I heard the news."

Arrange all chunks: 极了。 / 听到这个消息， / 我 / 高兴

0101.5 Your friend has cooked for you, and the food is far better than "quite good". Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

1.4.2 Doubling adjectives (AA / AABB)

0102.1 Double 清楚 (clear): 老师把问题说得 …… 的。

0102.2 Which phrase is correct?

- A. 红红的苹果
- B. 不红红的苹果
- C. 很红红的苹果
- D. 红红红的苹果

0102.3 Match each adjective to its doubled form.

- 1. 高兴
- 1. 干净
- 1. 慢
- 1. 大
- A. 大大
- B. 干干净净
- C. 慢慢
- D. 高高兴兴

0102.4 干净 can be doubled as 干净干净 to describe a room.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0102.5 You are describing a child's drawing: big eyes, a round face, a very tidy room.

Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

1.4.3 Adjective + 地 + Verb (making an adverb)

0103.1 Fill in the particle: 她安静 …… 看书。

0103.2 Choose the particle for both blanks: 他高兴 ___ 说: " 我考得 ___ 很好！ "

- A. 地 … 地
- B. 的 … 的
- C. 得 … 地
- D. 地 … 得

0103.3 Build: "Grandma walks slowly across the road."

Arrange all chunks: 走过 / 奶奶 / 马路 / 。/ 慢慢地

0103.4 他学习认真地。is a correct way to say "He studies seriously."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0103.5 Your grandmother crosses the busy road carefully; your little brother does his homework seriously for once. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

1.5 ■ Answers and explanations

1.5.1 Adjective + 极了 (extremely)

0101.1 极了

好看极了 = "absolutely brilliant". 极了 follows the adjective directly.

0101.2 D. 天气好极了。

极了 follows a bare adjective. 很 and 非常 would add a second degree word, and 极了 never comes first.

0101.3 True.

Adj + 极了 is typical of spoken reactions. In a formal report 非常冷 would be more usual.

0101.4 听到这个消息，我高兴极了。

Time clause first, then Subject + Adjective + 极了: 听到这个消息，我高兴极了。

0101.5 One possible response: 这个菜好吃极了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很 or 非常 in front: say 好极了, not 很好极了, because 极了 already carries the degree.
- 极了 never comes before the adjective: 冷极了, not 极了冷.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

1.5.2 Doubling adjectives (AA / AABB)

0102.1 清清楚楚

A two-syllable adjective AB doubles as AABB, so 清楚 becomes 清清楚楚.

0102.2 A. 红红的苹果

AA + 的 + noun. Doubling already adds degree, so 很 is not added, and doubled forms are not negated with 不.

0102.3 1–D: 高兴 = 高高兴兴; 2–B: 干净 = 干干净净; 3–C: 慢 = 慢慢; 4–A: 大 = 大大

One syllable gives AA; two syllables give AABB.

0102.4 False.

The two-syllable adjectives taught here double as AABB (干干净净). ABAB is the usual pattern for two-syllable verbs such as 研究研究; only a few descriptive adjectives such as 雪白 take ABAB.

0102.5 One possible response: 她有一双大大的眼睛。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很 or 非常 in front: 大大的眼睛, not 很大大的眼睛, because doubling already adds the degree.
- The common adjectives taught here use AABB, as in 干干净净. Some other adjectives allow ABAB, so learn each adjective and its accepted reduplicated form.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

1.5.3 Adjective + 地 + Verb (making an adverb)

0103.1 地

Adjective + 地 + Verb. 安静地看书 = "read quietly".

0103.2 D. 地 … 得

高兴地说 (地 before the verb) and 考得很好 (得 after the verb).

0103.3 奶奶慢慢地走过马路。

Subject + Adjective + 地 + Verb + Object.

0103.4 False.

地 + description must come before the verb (他认真地学习), or use 得 after it (他学得很认真).

0103.5 One possible response: 奶奶慢慢地走过马路。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 地 comes before the verb: 认真地学习. After the verb you need 得: 他学得很认真.
- Write 地, not 的, between the description and the verb; both are read de.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2 Adverbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

2.1 ■ 又 + Verb + 了 (again, in the past)

2.1.1 Late again

- Your classmate arrived late on Monday, and on Tuesday the teacher sighs when the door opens at 8:20.
- **他又迟到了。** – "He is late again." 又 says the same thing has happened once more.

2.1.2 Subject + 又 + Verb + 了

- **又** goes before the verb and 了 marks the repeated event as having happened: 又下雨了, 又忘了.
- It often carries a feeling: surprise, annoyance or amusement that it happened again.

我又忘了他的名字。
wǒ yòu wàng le tā de míng zi
Word guide: 我 – I; 又 – again; 忘 – forget; 他 – his; 名字 – name.



2.1.3 Repeated past events

- **昨天下雨，今天又下雨了。** – "It rained yesterday, and today it is raining again."
- With an object: **她又买了一双鞋。** – "She bought another pair of shoes."

她又买了一双鞋。
tā yòu mǎi le yì shuāng xié
Word guide: 她 – she; 又 – again; 买 – buy; 一 – a; 双 – pair; 鞋 – shoes.

2.1.4 Past again needs 又, not 再

- For something that has already happened again, use 又: 他又来了, not 他再来了.
- 又 stands before the verb, after the subject and any time word: 他昨天又迟到了.

2.1.5 又 for a repetition you can predict

- 又 also works for a regular repetition that is certain to come: **明天又是星期一了。** – "Tomorrow is Monday again."
- For a planned or requested repetition, use 再: 请再说一遍 – "Please say it again."

明天又是星期一了。
míng tiān yòu shì xīng qī yī le
Word guide: 明天 – tomorrow; 又 – again; 是 – is; 星期一 – Monday.

2.1.6 Recap

- **又 + Verb + 了** = did it again (it already happened once more).
- 又 also fits a certain, regular repetition (又是星期一了); a planned or requested "again" takes 再.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.2 ■ 一直 (all along, continuously)

2.2.1 It has not stopped all day

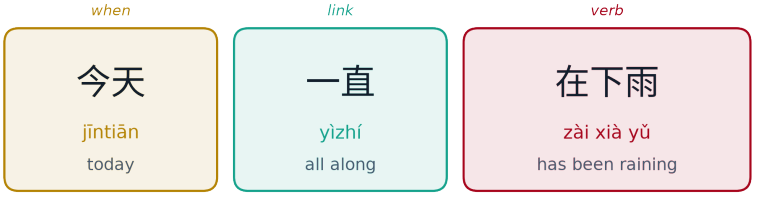
- You look out of the window at 6 p.m. The rain started in the morning and has not stopped once.
- **今天一直在下雨。** – "It has been raining all day (non-stop)."

2.2.2 一直 + Verb phrase

- **Subject + 一直 + Verb** = do something continuously, without a break, over a period: 一直在等, 一直很忙.
- It goes before the verb or adjective and often combines with 在 or 都.

我一直在等你。
wǒ yì zhí zài děng nǐ
Word guide: 我 – I; 一直 – the whole time; 在 – (ongoing); 等 – wait for; 你 – you.

一直: without a break



2.2.3 All along: a state that has not changed

- **我一直想去中国。** – "I have always wanted to go to China."
- **他一直住在上海。** – "He has lived in Shanghai all along." The state lasts from then until now.

他一直住在上海。
tā yì zhí zhù zài Shàng hǎi
Word guide: 他 – he; 一直 – all along; 住 – live; 在 – in; 上海 – Shanghai.

2.2.4 Continuous, not repeated

- 一直 means without interruption; for something done again and again, use 总是 or 经常.
- Put 一直 before the verb, not at the end of the sentence: 他一直在工作, not 他在工作一直.

2.2.5 Another meaning: straight ahead

- Giving directions, 一直 means "straight": **一直往前走，就到了。** – "Go straight ahead and you're there."
- With 没 or 不, it means "never, all this time": 他一直没来 – "He still hasn't come (the whole time)."

一直往前走。
yì zhí wǎng qián zǒu
Word guide: 一直 – straight; 往 – towards; 前 – the front; 走 – walk.

2.2.6 Recap

- **一直 + Verb/Adj** = continuously, all along, from then until now.
- 一直没 = has not … the whole time. In directions, 一直走 = go straight.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.3 ■ 总是 (always – a habit)

2.3.1 Every single morning

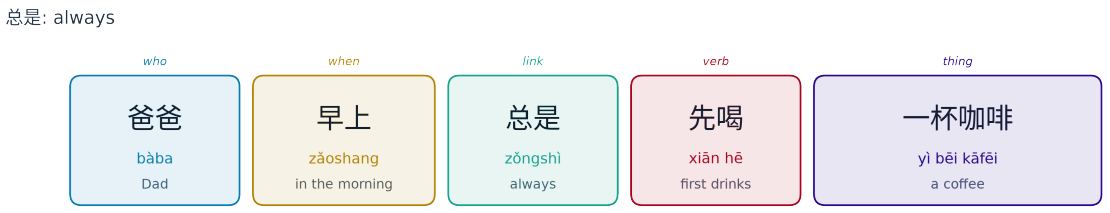
- Your father starts every day the same way, whatever the weather.
- **爸爸早上总是先喝一杯咖啡。** – "Dad always has a cup of coffee first thing in the morning."

2.3.2 Subject + 总是 + Verb

- **总是** = "always, every time": a habit or a pattern that keeps repeating. It goes before the verb.
- Time words come before it: 他周末总是去爬山 – "At weekends he always goes hiking."

他周末总是去爬山。
tā zhōu mò zǒng shì qù pá shān

Word guide: 他 – he; 周末 – at weekends; 总是 – always; 去 – go; 爬山 – hiking.



2.3.3 Habits and repeated situations

- **她总是第一个到教室。** – "She is always the first to arrive in the classroom."
- It can describe a repeated state too: 这里的冬天总是很冷。– "Winters here are always cold."

她总是第一个到教室。
tā zǒng shì dì yī gè dào jiào shì
Word guide: 她 – she; 总是 – always; 第一个 – the first; 到 – arrive at; 教室 – the classroom.

2.3.4 Position and negation

- 总是 goes before the verb, never at the end: 他总是迟到, not 他迟到总是.
- "Never" is not 总是不 in most cases; use 从来不: 他从来不喝酒 – "He never drinks."

2.3.5 总是 versus 老是 and 一直

- 总是 is neutral: a fact about a habit. 老是 sounds like a complaint: 你老是忘带钥匙!
- 一直 is one continuous stretch (一直在下雨); 总是 is the same thing happening again and again.

你老是忘带钥匙!
nǐ lǎo shì wàng dài yào shi
Word guide: 你 – you; 老是 – always; 忘 – forget; 带 – to bring; 钥匙 – keys.

2.3.6 Recap

- **总是 + Verb** = always, every time: a habit or repeated pattern.
- Before the verb, after time words. "Never" = 从来不; a complaint often uses 老是.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.4 ■ 终于 (finally, at last)

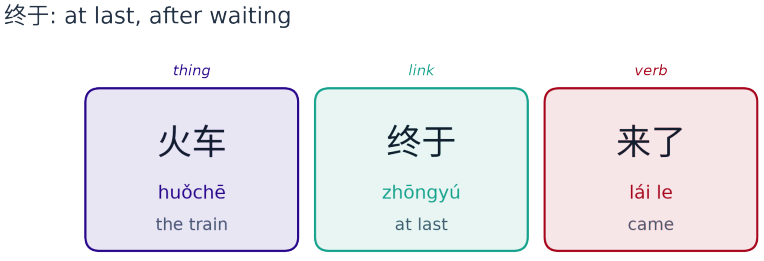
2.4.1 After a two-hour wait

- The train was delayed and you have been waiting on the platform since six. At eight it pulls in.
- **火车终于来了！** – "The train has finally come!"

2.4.2 Subject + 终于 + Verb (+ 了)

- **终于** = "finally, at last": a result comes after a long wait, effort or process. It goes before the verb.
- Because it reports an outcome that has now happened, the sentence usually ends with 了 or uses Verb + 了.

我终于找到了我的钥匙。
wǒ zhōng yú zhǎo dào le wǒ de yào shi
Word guide: 我 – I; 终于 – finally; 找到 – found; 我 – my; 钥匙 – keys.



2.4.3 After effort or after a long process

- **他学了三年，终于考上了大学。** – "After three years of study, he finally got into university."
- The outcome need not be good news: **他忙了一个月，终于病倒了。** – "After a month of overwork he finally fell ill."

他学了三年，终于考上了大学。
tā xué le sān nián zhōng yú kǎo shàng le dà xué
Word guide: 他 – he; 学 – study; 三年 – three years; 终于 – finally; 考上 – got into; 大学 – university.

2.4.4 What 终于 needs

- It needs a long wait or process before it; it does not mean "at the end of a list". For "lastly", use 最后.
- Put 终于 after the subject, before the verb: 他终于来了, not 终于他来了 in ordinary speech.

2.4.5 终于 versus 最后

- 最后 orders events: 我们先吃饭，最后去看电影 – “First we ate, and last we went to a film.”
- 终于 adds the feeling of a long wait reaching its end: 等了两个小时，电影终于开始了。

等了两个小时，电影终于开始了。
děng le liǎng ge xiǎo shí diàn yǐng zhōng yú kāi shǐ le
Word guide: 等 – wait; 两个 – two; 小时 – hours; 电影 – the film; 终于 – finally; 开始 – start.

2.4.6 Recap

- **终于 + Verb (+ 了)** = finally, at last, after a long wait or effort; the outcome may be welcome or not.
- 终于 goes before the verb. For the last step in a sequence, use 最后.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.5 ■ 几乎 (nearly, almost)

2.5.1 So close

- You stayed up late and only remembered the test at breakfast.
- **我几乎忘了今天有考试。** – “I almost forgot there was a test today.” It came very close but did not happen.

2.5.2 几乎 + Verb or Adjective

- **几乎** = “almost, nearly”: it goes before the verb, adjective or number phrase it limits.
- It often goes with 都 or 每: 他几乎每天都跑步 – “He runs almost every day.”

他几乎每天都跑步。
tā jī hū měi tiān dōu pǎo bù
Word guide: 他 – he; 几乎 – almost; 每天 – every day; 都 – (all); 跑步 – run.



2.5.3 Almost all, almost none

- With 所有 or 都: **几乎所有的学生都来了。** – "Almost all the students came."
- With 没 or 不: **我几乎没睡觉。** – "I hardly slept at all."

几乎所有的学生都来了。
jī hū suǒ yǒu de xué sheng dōu lái le
Word guide: 几乎 – almost; 所有 – all; 学生 – students; 都 – (all); 来 – come.

2.5.4 Where 几乎 goes

- Put 几乎 before the part that is "almost": 几乎每天, 几乎没有, 几乎都. Not after the verb.
- With 都, 几乎 comes first: 我们几乎都去过, not 我们都几乎去过.

2.5.5 几乎 versus 差不多

- 差不多 also means "about, almost", and is more common in speech: 差不多十点了.
- 几乎 stresses how close something came, and suits 没 / 不: 他几乎不说话 – "He hardly says a word."

他几乎不说话。
tā jī hū bù shuō huà
Word guide: 他 – he; 几乎 – almost; 不 – not; 说话 – speak.

2.5.6 Recap

- **几乎 + Verb / Adj / number phrase** = almost, nearly.
- 几乎都 / 几乎所有 = almost all; 几乎没 / 几乎不 = hardly at all.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.6 ■ 只 (only)

2.6.1 Just one bowl, please

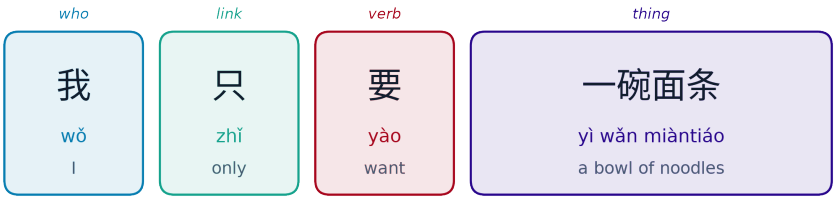
- At a noodle shop your friend orders three dishes. You are not hungry.
- **我只要一碗面条。** – "I only want a bowl of noodles."

2.6.2 Subject + 只 + Verb

- **只** = "only, just" and goes before the verb, even when "only" in English seems to belong to the object.
- 我只喝茶 – "I only drink tea." 他只去过北京 – "He has only been to Beijing."

他只去过北京。
tā zhǐ qù guo Běi jīng
Word guide: 他 – he; 只 – only; 去过 – has been to; 北京 – Beijing.

只: only



2.6.3 Only a small amount

- With a number: **我只有十块钱。** – "I only have ten yuan."
- With a completed action: **昨天我只睡了五个小时。** – "Yesterday I only slept five hours."

我只有十块钱。
wǒ zhǐ yǒu shí kuài qián
Word guide: 我 – I; 只 – only; 有 – have; 十 – ten; 块 – yuan; 钱 – money.

2.6.4 只 never stands before the subject

- "Only I went" is 只有我去了, not 只我去了: before a noun or the subject, use 只有.
- Keep 只 before the verb, not after it: 我只喝了一杯, not 我喝了只一杯.

2.6.5 只 versus 只有

- 只 limits the action: 我只会说一点儿中文 – "I can only speak a little Chinese."
- 只有 limits a person or thing: **只有她知道答案。** – "Only she knows the answer."

只有她知道答案。
zhǐ yǒu tā zhī dào dá àn
Word guide: 只有 – only; 她 – she; 知道 – knows; 答案 – the answer.

2.6.6 Recap

- **只 + Verb** = only, just; it stands before the verb.
- To make a noun or subject "only", use **只有 + noun**: 只有我, 只有一个.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.7 ■ Duration + 没 + Verb + 了 (how long you haven't ...)

2.7.1 Three days without meat

- Your friend is on a vegetable diet and is starting to miss dumplings.
- **我三天没吃肉了。** – "I haven't eaten meat for three days."

2.7.2 Duration + 没 + Verb + 了

- **Subject + duration + 没 + Verb (+ object) + 了** = has not done something for that length of time.
- The duration comes before 没, unlike a positive duration, which follows the verb.

我三天没吃肉了。
wǒ sān tiān méi chī ròu le
Word guide: 我 – I; 三天 – three days; 没 – not; 吃 – eat; 肉 – meat.



2.7.3 Counting the gap up to now

- **我们好久没见了！** – "We haven't seen each other for ages!"
- **他两个星期没来上课了。** – "He hasn't come to class for two weeks."

我们好久没见了！
wǒ men hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn le
Word guide: 我们 – we; 好久 – a long time; 没 – not; 见 – see.

2.7.4 Two things that must stay

- Keep the final 了 when the gap lasts up to now: 我三天没吃肉了 means it is still true today.
- Put the duration before 没: 三天没吃肉了, not 没吃肉三天了.

2.7.5 Positive duration goes after the verb

- Positive: **我学了两年中文。** – "I studied Chinese for two years." The duration follows the verb.
- Negative gap: **我两年没说中文了。** – "I haven't spoken Chinese for two years." The duration moves to the front.

我两年没说中文了。
wǒ liǎng nián méi shuō Zhōng wén le
Word guide: 我 – I; 两年 – two years; 没 – not; 说 – speak; 中文 – Chinese.

2.7.6 Recap

- **Duration + 没 + Verb + 了** = haven't done it for that long (up to now).
- Negative gap: duration before 没. Positive duration: after the verb (学了两年).

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.8 ■ Time + 才 (not until – lateness)

2.8.1 Not until midnight

- The party was supposed to end at ten. Your brother walked in at midnight.
- **他十二点才回家。** – "He didn't get home until twelve." 才 says it was later than expected.

2.8.2 Time + 才 + Verb

- **Subject + time + 才 + Verb** = not until that time; the speaker finds it late.
- The time word comes before 才, and 才 stands right before the verb.

他十二点才回家。
tā shí èr diǎn cái huí jiā
Word guide: 他 – he; 十二点 – twelve o'clock; 才 – not until; 回家 – go home.



2.8.3 Late after a condition or a process

- After a long process: **我学了三年才敢说中文。** – "I studied for three years before I dared to speak Chinese."
- The time can be a clause: **他吃了药才睡着。** – "He only fell asleep after taking medicine."

我学了三年才敢说中文。
wǒ xué le sān nián cái gǎn shuō Zhōng wén
Word guide: 我 – I; 学 – study; 三年 – three years; 才 – only then; 敢 – dare; 说 – speak; 中文 – Chinese.

2.8.4 Read 才 and aspect in context

- The simple late-arrival model here is 他十二点才回家. Other contexts can allow 了; do not treat 才 as a universal ban on aspect or change-of-state marking.
- The time word goes before 才: 九点才起床, not 才九点起床 (that means "it's only nine").

2.8.5 The opposite: 就 for early

- **他六点就回家了。** – "He was home as early as six." 就 makes the time sound early, and 了 is normal.
- The same clock time can take 才 or 就, depending on what was expected.

他六点就回家了。
tā liù diǎn jiù huí jiā le
Word guide: 他 – he; 六点 – six o'clock; 就 – already; 回家 – go home.

2.8.6 Recap

- **Time + 才 + Verb** = not until then; later than expected.
- The simple late-arrival model omits final 了. Other 才 constructions can use aspectual or sentence-final 了; choose from the whole message.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.9 ■ 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

2.9.1 Instructions for a guest

- A friend is staying with you and asks how to use the washing machine.
- **你先放衣服，再按这个按钮。** – "First put the clothes in, then press this button."

2.9.2 先 + Verb 1，再 + Verb 2

- **先 … 再 …** = "first …, then …" for plans, suggestions and instructions.
- Both words are adverbs, so each goes before its verb, after the subject.

我们先吃饭，再看电影吧。
wǒ men xiān chī fàn zài kàn diàn yǐng ba
Word guide: 我们 – we; 先 – first; 吃饭 – eat; 再 – then; 看 – watch; 电影 – a film.



2.9.3 Suggesting an order

- **你先休息一下，再做作业。** – "Rest a bit first, then do your homework."
- With 然后 between them for a longer list: 先洗手，然后做饭，再吃饭。

你先休息一下，再做作业。
nǐ xiān xiū xi yí xià zài zuò zuò yè
Word guide: 你 – you; 先 – first; 休息 – rest; 一下 – a bit; 再 – then; 做 – do; 作业 – homework.

2.9.4 Future plans, not past events

- 再 is for steps still to come. For what already happened, use 先 … 然后 / 又 …: 我先吃了饭，然后去看电影了.
- Put 先 after the subject: 我先走, not 先我走.

2.9.5 先 ... 再 ... versus 先 ... 然后 ...

- 然后 is a conjunction and can start the second clause on its own: 先买票，然后进去。
- 先 … 再 … stresses that the second step must wait for the first: 你先想好，再回答。

你先想好，再回答。
nǐ xiān xiǎng hǎo zài huí dá
Word guide: 你 – you; 先 – first; 想 – think; 好 – it through; 再 – then; 回答 – answer.

2.9.6 Recap

- **先 A，再 B** = first A, then B, for plans and instructions.
- For past sequences, use 先 … 然后 / 又 … with 了.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.10 ■ 一边 ... 一边 ... (doing two things at once)

2.10.1 Breakfast and the news

- Every morning your grandfather reads the paper while he drinks his tea.
- **爷爷一边喝茶一边看报纸。** – "Grandpa reads the paper while drinking tea."

2.10.2 一边 + Verb 1 + 一边 + Verb 2

- **Subject + 一边 A + 一边 B** = do A and B at the same time. Each 一边 goes before its own verb.
- Both actions belong to the same person, and both are activities that can last: 听, 看, 走, 聊, 吃.

我一边听音乐一边做作业。
wǒ yì biān tīng yīn yuè yì biān zuò zuò yè
Word guide: 我 – I; 一边 – while; 听 – listen to; 音乐 – music; 一边 – (at the same time); 做 – do; 作业 – homework.



2.10.3 Shorter 边 … 边 …

- With one-syllable verbs, speakers often shorten it: **我们边走边聊。** – "We chatted as we walked."
- It also describes the scene in a story: 他一边哭一边说 – "He spoke while crying."

我们边走边聊。
wǒ men biān zǒu biān liáo
Word guide: 我们 – we; 边 – while; 走 – walk; 边 – (at the same time); 聊 – chat.

2.10.4 Actions, not states

- Use action verbs that can happen together; 一边是学生一边是老师 is wrong. For two roles, use 既 … 又 … or 也.
- Keep one subject before the first 一边: 他一边吃一边看, not 一边他吃一边看.

2.10.5 一边 … 一边 … versus 又 … 又 …

- 一边 … 一边 … is two actions at the same moment: 一边唱一边跳.
- 又 … 又 … describes two qualities or a lively scene: 又唱又跳 – "singing and dancing (all over the place)."

孩子们又唱又跳。
hái zi men yòu chàng yòu tiào
Word guide: 孩子们 – the children; 又 – both; 唱 – sing; 又 – and; 跳 – dance.

2.10.6 Recap

- **一边 A 一边 B** = doing A while doing B, same person, same time.
- Short form with one-syllable verbs: 边走边聊. Use action verbs, not 是 or other states.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.11 ■ 老是 (always – a complaint)

2.11.1 Not again!

- Your roommate leaves dirty dishes in the sink, and it is the third time this week.
- **你老是不洗碗！** – "You never wash the dishes!" (literally "you always don't wash them"). 老是 complains.

2.11.2 Subject + 老是 + Verb

- **老是** = “always, keep on (doing)” with annoyance. It goes before the verb, like 总是.
- It is spoken and emotional; you usually would not use it in a formal report.

他老是迟到。
tā lǎo shì chí dào
Word guide: 他 – he; 老是 – keeps; 迟到 – being late.



2.11.3 Complaints and worries

- **我的电脑老是出问题。** – “My computer keeps having problems.”
- It can describe yourself: **我老是忘记带伞。** – “I keep forgetting to bring an umbrella.”

我的电脑老是出问题。
wǒ de diàn nǎo lǎo shì chū wèn tí
Word guide: 我 – my; 电脑 – computer; 老是 – keeps; 出 – having; 问题 – problems.

2.11.4 Tone and position

- Use 老是 for something irritating or worrying; for a neutral habit (他总是七点起床) choose 总是.
- 老是 goes before the verb (or before 不 / 没): 你老是不听, not 你不老是听.

2.11.5 老是 versus 总是

- 总是 reports a pattern: **他总是坐地铁上班。** – “He always takes the subway to work.”
- 老是 adds a complaint: **他老是坐错车。** – “He keeps getting on the wrong train.”

他老是坐错车。
tā lǎo shì zuò cuò chē
Word guide: 他 – he; 老是 – keeps; 坐 – take; 错 – the wrong; 车 – train.

2.11.6 Recap

- **老是 + Verb** = keeps doing, always, with annoyance or worry.
- Spoken and emotional. For a neutral habit, use 总是.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.12 ■ 才 + Number (only – a small amount)

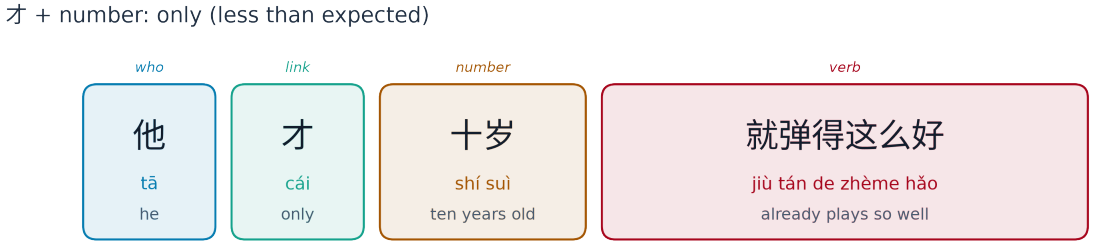
2.12.1 Only ten years old

- A boy at the piano competition plays better than adults, and everyone is surprised by his age.
- **他才十岁，钢琴就弹得这么好！** – "He's only ten, and he already plays the piano this well!"

2.12.2 才 + Number

- **才 + number (+ measure word)** = "only": the speaker finds the amount small. 才五块钱, 才两个人.
- Before a verb with a number, 才 goes before the verb: 我才喝了一杯 – "I've only had one glass."

这件衣服才五十块。
zhè jiàn yī fu cái wǔ shí kuài
Word guide: 这 – this; 件 – (measure word); 衣服 – clothes; 才 – only; 五十 – fifty; 块 – yuan.



2.12.3 Small amounts, early times

- **我才学了三个月中文。** – "I've only studied Chinese for three months."
- With a clock time it means "it's only …": **现在才七点，再睡一会儿吧。** – "It's only seven; sleep a little longer."

现在才七点，再睡一会儿吧。
xiàn zài cái qī diǎn zài shuì yí huìr ba
Word guide: 现在 – now; 才 – only; 七点 – seven o'clock; 再 – a little more; 睡 – sleep; 一会儿 – a while.

2.12.4 Which 才 is it?

- 才 before the number = "only that much": 才九点 – "it's only nine".
- 才 after the time, before the verb = "not until": 九点才起床 – "didn't get up until nine". Same word, different position.

2.12.5 才 versus 只

- 只 limits an amount neutrally: 我只有十块钱.
- 才 adds the speaker's surprise that the amount is small: 他才十岁 – "He's only ten (so young!)."

我只有十块钱。
wǒ zhǐ yǒu shí kuài qián
Word guide: 我 – I; 只 – only; 有 – have; 十 – ten; 块 – yuan; 钱 – money.

2.12.6 Recap

- **才 + number** = only, and less than expected: 才十岁, 才五块钱.
- 才 + number = only; time + 才 + verb = not until. 只 is the neutral "only".

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.13 ■ Practice without the models

2.13.1 又 + Verb + 了 (again, in the past)

0201.1 Complete: "My phone is broken again." 我的手机 …… 坏了。

0201.2 Which says "He came again yesterday."?

- A. 他昨天又来了。
- B. 他昨天再来了。
- C. 昨天他来了又。
- D. 他又昨天来了。

0201.3 Build: "She bought another pair of shoes."

Arrange all chunks: 一双鞋。 / 又 / 买了 / 她

0201.4 明天又是星期一了 is correct, even though it is about tomorrow.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0201.5 Your classmate arrived late on Monday, and on Tuesday the teacher sighs when the door opens at 8:20. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.2 一直 (all along, continuously)

0202.1 Complete: "He has been busy the whole time." 他 …… 很忙。

0202.2 "She goes to the gym every Monday and Friday." Which adverb fits best?

- A. 才
- B. 经常
- C. 一直
- D. 又

0202.3 Build: “I have always wanted to go to China.”

Arrange all chunks: 一直 / 去中国。 / 想 / 我

0202.4 In directions, 一直走 means “keep turning”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0202.5 You look out of the window at 6 p.m. The rain started in the morning and has not stopped once. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.3 总是 (always – a habit)

0203.1 Complete: “She always walks to school.” 她 …… 走路去学校。

0203.2 Which says “He never eats meat.”?

- A. 他一直吃肉。
- B. 他总是吃肉。
- C. 他吃肉总是不。
- D. 他从来不吃肉。

0203.3 Match each sentence to what it expresses.

- 1. 他总是七点起床。
- 1. 你老是迟到!
- 1. 雨一直在下。
- A. a complaint about a habit
- B. a neutral habit
- C. one continuous stretch of time

0203.4 Build: “At weekends he always goes hiking.”

Arrange all chunks: 周末 / 去爬山。 / 他 / 总是

0203.5 Your father starts every day the same way, whatever the weather. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.4 终于 (finally, at last)

0204.1 Complete: “After a week of rain, the sun has finally come out.” 下了一个星期的雨，太阳 …… 出来了。

0204.2 “First we went to the museum, and lastly we went shopping.” Which word fills the gap? 我们先去了博物馆，_____ 去买东西。

- A. 又
- B. 终于
- C. 一直
- D. 最后

0204.3 Build: “I finally found my keys.”

Arrange all chunks: 我的钥匙。 / 终于 / 我 / 找到了

0204.4 终于 can only introduce good news.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0204.5 The train was delayed and you have been waiting on the platform since six. At eight it pulls in. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.5 几乎 (nearly, almost)

0205.1 Complete: “She goes to the library almost every day.” 她 …… 每天都去图书馆。

0205.2 Which says “We have almost all been there.”?

- A. 我们去过几乎都。
- B. 我们都几乎去过。
- C. 我们几乎都去过。
- D. 几乎我们去过都。

0205.3 我几乎没睡觉 means “I hardly slept at all.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0205.4 Build: “Almost all the students came.”

Arrange all chunks: 都 / 几乎 / 所有的学生 / 来了。

0205.5 You stayed up late and only remembered the test at breakfast. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.6 只 (only)

0206.1 Complete: “I only drink green tea.” 我 …… 喝绿茶。

0206.2 Which says “Only Xiao Wang came.”?

- A. 只小王来了。
- B. 小王只来了。
- C. 小王来了只。
- D. 只有小王来了。

0206.3 Build: “Yesterday I only slept five hours.”

Arrange all chunks: 昨天 / 只 / 睡了五个小时。 / 我

0206.4 我喝了只一杯咖啡 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0206.5 At a noodle shop your friend orders three dishes. You are not hungry. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.7 Duration + 没 + Verb + 了 (how long you haven’t …)

0207.1 Complete: “I haven’t phoned home for a week.” 我一个星期没给家里打电话 ……。

0207.2 Which says “He hasn’t slept for two days.”?

- A. 他没两天睡觉。
- B. 他没睡觉两天了。
- C. 他睡觉两天没了。
- D. 他两天没睡觉了。

0207.3 Build: “We haven’t seen each other for ages!”

Arrange all chunks: 我们 / 好久 / 了！ / 没见

0207.4 In 我学了两年中文, the duration comes after the verb because the sentence is positive.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0207.5 Your friend is on a vegetable diet and is starting to miss dumplings. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.8 Time + 才 (not until – lateness)

0208.1 Complete: “The film didn’t start until nine.” 电影九点 …… 开始。

0208.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他才十一点睡觉。
- B. 他十一点睡才觉了。
- C. 他十一点才睡觉。
- D. 他十一点睡觉才。

0208.3 Build: “He only fell asleep after taking medicine.”

Arrange all chunks: 他 / 才 / 吃了药 / 睡着。

0208.4 他六点就回家了 and 他六点才回家 give opposite impressions of the same time.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0208.5 The party was supposed to end at ten. Your brother walked in at midnight. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.9 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

0209.1 Complete the plan: “Let’s buy tickets first, then go in.” 我们先买票，…… 进去。

0209.2 Which describes what you did yesterday?

- A. 先我昨天去银行，再去超市。
- B. 我昨天先去银行，再去超市了。
- C. 我昨天再去银行，先去超市。
- D. 我昨天先去了银行，然后去了超市。

0209.3 Build: “Rest a bit first, then do your homework.”

Arrange all chunks: 你先 / ， 再 / 做作业。 / 休息一下

0209.4 先我走 is the normal way to say “I’ll go first.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0209.5 A friend is staying with you and asks how to use the washing machine. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.10 一边 ... 一边 ... (doing two things at once)

0210.1 Complete: “She sings while she cooks.” 她 …… 做饭一边唱歌。

0210.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他一边吃饭一边看手机。
- B. 他一边是医生一边是老师。
- C. 一边他吃饭一边看手机。
- D. 他吃饭一边看手机一边。

0210.3 Build: “We chatted as we walked.”

Arrange all chunks: 我们 / 边聊。/ 边走

0210.4 一边 … 一边 … and 又 … 又 … are always interchangeable.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0210.5 Every morning your grandfather reads the paper while he drinks his tea. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.11 老是 (always – a complaint)

0211.1 Complain: “You keep playing on your phone!” 你 …… 玩手机！

0211.2 A news report says the factory opens at eight every day. Which adverb suits the neutral report?

- A. 老是
- B. 才
- C. 又
- D. 总是

0211.3 Build: “I keep forgetting to bring an umbrella.”

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 老是 / 带伞。/ 忘记

0211.4 你不老是听 is the right way to say “You never listen.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0211.5 Your roommate leaves dirty dishes in the sink, and it is the third time this week. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.13.12 才 + Number (only – a small amount)

0212.1 Complete with surprise: “This bag is only twenty yuan!” 这个包 …… 二十块！

0212.2 Match each sentence to its meaning.

- 1. 现在才九点。
- 1. 他九点才起床。
- 1. 我才喝了一杯。
- A. He didn't get up until nine.
- B. It's only nine o'clock.
- C. I've only had one glass.

0212.3 Build: "I've only studied Chinese for three months."

Arrange all chunks: 三个月中文。 / 学了 / 才 / 我

0212.4 他才十岁 sounds more surprised than 他十岁.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0212.5 A boy at the piano competition plays better than adults, and everyone is surprised by his age. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.14 ■ Answers and explanations

2.14.1 又 + Verb + 了 (again, in the past)

0201.1 又

The breakage has already happened again, so 又 + Verb + 了.

0201.2 A. 他昨天又来了。

Subject + time + 又 + verb + 了.

0201.3 她又买了一双鞋。

Subject + 又 + Verb + 了 + object.

0201.4 True.

又 can describe a repetition that is certain to come, such as the days of the week.

0201.5 One possible response: 他又迟到了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- For something that has already happened again, use 又: 他又来了, not 他再来了.
- 又 stands before the verb, after the subject and any time word: 他昨天又迟到了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.2 一直 (all along, continuously)

0202.1 一直

一直 + Adj = continuously in that state.

0202.2 B. 经常

Repeated visits are frequent, not continuous, so 经常 (or 总是) fits; 一直 means without a break.

0202.3 我一直想去中国。

Subject + 一直 + 想 + verb phrase.

0202.4 False.

一直走 means "go straight (ahead)".

0202.5 One possible response: 今天一直在下雨。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 一直 means without interruption; for something done again and again, use 总是 or 经常.

- Put 一直 before the verb, not at the end of the sentence: 他一直在工作, not 他在工作一直.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.3 总是 (always – a habit)

0203.1 总是

A habit takes 总是 before the verb.

0203.2 D. 他从来不吃肉。

"Never" as a habit is 从来不 + verb.

0203.3 1–B: 他总是七点起床。= a neutral habit; 2–A: 你老是迟到！= a complaint about a habit; 3–C: 雨一直在下。= one continuous stretch of time

总是 states a habit, 老是 complains about it, 一直 describes something unbroken.

0203.4 他周末总是去爬山。

Subject + time word + 总是 + verb phrase.

0203.5 One possible response: 爸爸早上总是先喝一杯咖啡。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 总是 goes before the verb, never at the end: 他总是迟到, not 他迟到总是.
- "Never" is not 总是不 in most cases; use 从来不: 他从来不喝酒 – "He never drinks."
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.4 终于 (finally, at last)

0204.1 终于

A long wait ends, so 终于 + verb + 了.

0204.2 D. 最后

最后 marks the last step in a sequence; there is no long wait here.

0204.3 我终于找到了我的钥匙。

Subject + 终于 + Verb + 了 + object.

0204.4 False.

It reports any outcome reached after a long process, e.g. 他终于病倒了.

0204.5 One possible response: 火车终于来了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- It needs a long wait or process before it; it does not mean "at the end of a list". For "lastly", use 最后.
- Put 终于 after the subject, before the verb: 他终于来了, not 终于他来了 in ordinary speech.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.5 几乎 (nearly, almost)

0205.1 几乎

几乎 + 每天都 = almost every day.

0205.2 C. 我们几乎都去过。

几乎 comes before 都.

0205.3 True.

几乎 + 没 = almost not, i.e. hardly.

0205.4 几乎所有的学生都来了。

几乎 + 所有的 + noun + 都 + verb.

0205.5 One possible response: 我几乎忘了今天有考试。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 几乎 before the part that is "almost": 几乎每天, 几乎没有, 几乎都. Not after the verb.
- With 都, 几乎 comes first: 我们几乎都去过, not 我们都几乎去过.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.6 只 (only)

0206.1 只

只 goes before the verb 喝.

0206.2 D. 只有小王来了。

To limit a person, use 只有 + noun. 小王只来了 would mean he only came (and did nothing else).

0206.3 昨天我只睡了五个小时。

Time + subject + 只 + verb + 了 + duration.

0206.4 False.

只 goes before the verb: 我只喝了一杯咖啡.

0206.5 One possible response: 我只要一碗面条。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "Only I went" is 只有我去了, not 只我去了: before a noun or the subject, use 只有.
- Keep 只 before the verb, not after it: 我只喝了一杯, not 我喝了只一杯.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.7 Duration + 没 + Verb + 了 (how long you haven't ...)

0207.1 了

The final 了 shows the gap lasts until now.

0207.2 D. 他两天没睡觉了。

Duration + 没 + verb + 了.

0207.3 我们好久没见了!

Subject + duration + 没 + verb + 了.

0207.4 True.

A positive duration follows the verb; a negative gap puts the duration before 没.

0207.5 One possible response: 我三天没吃肉了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Keep the final 了 when the gap lasts up to now: 我三天没吃肉了 means it is still true today.
- Put the duration before 没: 三天没吃肉了, not 没吃肉三天了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.8 Time + 才 (not until – lateness)

0208.1 才

Time + 才 + Verb presents the start as later than expected.

0208.2 C. 他十一点才睡觉。

Time precedes 才, which precedes the verb in this simple model. Other constructions with 才 can allow 了.

0208.3 他吃了药才睡着。

Condition + 才 + result.

0208.4 True.

就 presents six as early; 才 presents it as late.

0208.5 One possible response: 他十二点才回家。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The simple late-arrival model here is 他十二点才回家. Other contexts can allow 了; do not treat 才 as a universal ban on aspect or change-of-state marking.
- The time word goes before 才: 九点才起床, not 才九点起床 (that means "it's only nine").
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.9 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

0209.1 再

先 … 再 … orders future steps.

0209.2 D. 我昨天先去了银行，然后去了超市。

For past events use 先 … 然后 … with 了; 再 is for steps still to come.

0209.3 你先休息一下，再做作业。

先 + verb 1, 再 + verb 2.

0209.4 False.

先 goes after the subject: 我先走.

0209.5 One possible response: 你先放衣服，再按这个按钮。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 再 is for steps still to come. For what already happened, use 先 … 然后 / 又 …: 我先吃了饭，然后去看电影了.
- Put 先 after the subject: 我先走, not 先我走.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.10 一边 … 一边 … (doing two things at once)

0210.1 一边

一边 A 一边 B – the first 一边 goes before 做饭.

0210.2 A. 他一边吃饭一边看手机。

Subject + 一边 action + 一边 action. 是 is not an action that can run alongside another.

0210.3 我们边走边聊。

The short form 边 … 边 … fits one-syllable verbs.

0210.4 False.

一边 … 一边 … joins two simultaneous actions; 又 … 又 … usually joins two qualities.

0210.5 One possible response: 爷爷一边喝茶一边看报纸。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use action verbs that can happen together; 一边是学生一边是老师 is wrong. For two roles, use 既 … 又 … or 也.
- Keep one subject before the first 一边: 他一边吃一边看, not 一边他吃一边看.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.11 老是 (always – a complaint)

0211.1 老是

老是 + verb for an irritating habit.

0211.2 D. 总是

总是 states a neutral habit; 老是 would sound like a complaint.

0211.3 我老是忘记带伞。

Subject + 老是 + verb phrase.

0211.4 False.

老是 comes before 不: 你老是不听.

0211.5 One possible response: 你老是不洗碗!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 老是 for something irritating or worrying; for a neutral habit (他总是七点起床) choose 总是.
- 老是 goes before the verb (or before 不 / 没): 你老是不听, not 你不老是听.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.14.12 才 + Number (only – a small amount)

0212.1 才

才 + number shows the amount is smaller than expected.

0212.2 1–B: 现在才九点。= It's only nine o'clock.; 2–A: 他九点才起床。= He didn't get up until nine.; 3–C: 我才喝了一杯。= I've only had one glass.

Before a number, 才 means "only"; after a time and before the verb, it means "not until".

0212.3 我才学了三个月中文。

才 goes before the verb that carries the small amount.

0212.4 True.

才 adds the feeling that the age is surprisingly young.

0212.5 One possible response: 他才十岁，钢琴就弹得这么好!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 才 before the number = "only that much": 才九点 – "it's only nine".
- 才 after the time, before the verb = "not until": 九点才起床 – "didn't get up until nine". Same word, different position.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3 Adverbs with Adjectives

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

3.1 ■ 这么 / 那么 + Adjective (so …)

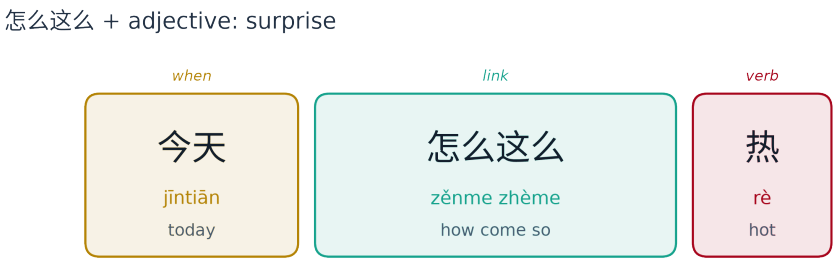
3.1.1 It really is that hot

- You step outside in July and it is much hotter than you expected.
- **今天怎么这么热!** – "How come it is so hot today!" 这么 points to the degree you are feeling right now.

3.1.2 这么 / 那么 + Adjective

- **这么 + Adj** = "so …" about something here and now; **那么 + Adj** = "so …" about something over there, earlier or mentioned.
- Like 很, they stand directly before the adjective: 这么贵, 那么远.

这件衣服这么贵。
zhè jiàn yī fu zhè me guì
Word guide: 这 – this; 件 – (measure word); 衣服 – clothes; 这么 – so; 贵 – expensive.



3.1.3 Near and far

- Holding the shoes: **这双鞋这么便宜!** – "These shoes are so cheap!"
- Talking about a city you visited: **那儿的冬天那么冷，你怎么受得了?** – "The winters there are so cold; how do you stand it?"

你家那么远，每天怎么来?
nǐ jiā nà me yuǎn měi tiān zěn me lái
Word guide: 你 – you; 家 – home; 那么 – so; 远 – far; 每天 – every day; 怎么 – how; 来 – come.

3.1.4 Keep one degree word

- Do not add 很 as well: 这么热, not 这么很热, since 这么 already gives the degree.
- Place 这么 or 那么 before the adjective, not after it: 那么远, not 远那么.

3.1.5 Also in comparisons

- 那么 often sharpens a 没有 comparison: **我没有他那么高。** – "I am not as tall as him."
- 这么 can also go before a verb of degree: 你怎么这么喜欢吃辣的?

我没有他那么高。
wǒ méi yǒu tā nà me gāo
Word guide: 我 – I; 没有 – not as; 他 – him; 那么 – so; 高 – tall.

3.1.6 Recap

- **这么 / 那么 + Adjective** = "so …": 这么 for here and now, 那么 for there, then or what was mentioned.
- It replaces 很; it often comes with 怎么 (surprise) or 没有 (comparison).

Practise this pattern step by step.

3.2 ■ A 跟 / 和 B 一样 (the same as)

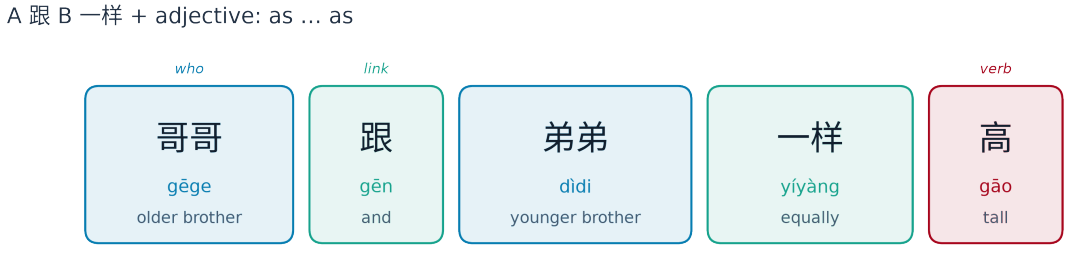
3.2.1 Twins in the same class

- Two classmates are exactly the same height, and a new teacher keeps mixing them up.
- **哥哥跟弟弟一样高。** – "The older brother is as tall as the younger brother."

3.2.2 A 跟 / 和 B 一样 (+ Adjective)

- **A + 跟 / 和 + B + 一样** = "A is the same as B"; add an adjective to say in what way: 一样高, 一样忙.
- 跟 and 和 both work here; 跟 is a little more common in speech.

我的手机跟你的一样。
wǒ de shǒu jī gēn nǐ de yí yàng
Word guide: 我 – my; 手机 – phone; 跟 – and; 你 – yours; 一样 – the same.



3.2.3 The same as, but not the same

- Negate by putting 不 before 一样: **我的想法跟你的不一样。** – "My idea is different from yours."
- Ask with 吗 or 一样不一样: 北京的冬天跟上海的一样冷吗?

今天跟昨天一样冷。
jīn tiān gēn zuó tiān yí yàng lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 跟 – and; 昨天 – yesterday; 一样 – equally; 冷 – cold.

3.2.4 Where 不 and 很 go

- 不 goes before 一样: 跟他不一样, not 不跟他一样 for "different from him".
- No 很 before the adjective after 一样: 一样高, not 一样很高.

3.2.5 一样 versus 比

- 一样 says the two are equal; 比 says one is more: 哥哥比弟弟高 ("taller than").
- 一样 can also describe a noun with 的: 我们买了一样的衣服。– "We bought the same clothes."

我们买了一样的衣服。
wǒ men mǎi le yí yàng de yī fu
Word guide: 我们 – we; 买 – bought; 一样 – the same; 衣服 – clothes.

3.2.6 Recap

- **A 跟/和 B 一样 (+ Adj)** = A is (as Adj as) B. Negative: A 跟 B **不一样**.
- The adjective after 一样 stays bare; 一样的 + noun = the same thing.

Practise this pattern step by step.

3.3 ■ 又 ... 又 ... (both ... and ...)

3.3.1 A good buy

- You found a jacket that looks great and costs very little, and you want to say both at once.
- **这件衣服又便宜又好看。** – "This jacket is both cheap and good-looking."

3.3.2 又 + A + 又 + B

- **Subject + 又 + Adj/Verb + 又 + Adj/Verb**: each 又 sits directly before its own description.
- The two qualities point the same way, both good or both bad: 又快又好, 又累又饿.

我又累又饿。
wǒ yòu lèi yòu è
Word guide: 我 – I; 又 – both; 累 – tired; 又 – and; 饿 – hungry.

又 A 又 B: both … and …



3.3.3 Actions as well as qualities

- Verb phrases fit too: **孩子们又唱又跳。** – "The children sang and danced."
- Use it to describe a person or place with two clear features: 她的房间又大又干净。

孩子们又唱又跳。
hái zi men yòu chàng yòu tiào
Word guide: 孩子们 – the children; 又 – both; 唱 – sing; 又 – and; 跳 – dance.

3.3.4 Keep the two halves matched

- Use two qualities with the same direction: 又便宜又好看 is natural; 又便宜又难看 sounds odd unless you are joking.
- No 很 inside the pattern: 又高又大, not 又很高又很大.

3.3.5 又 … 又 … versus 也 and 和

- 和 cannot join two adjectives in a predicate: say 又便宜又好看, not 便宜和好看.
- 又 … 又 … stresses that both features are present at the same time; 很便宜，也很好看 lists them one after another.

这儿的菜很便宜，也很好吃。
zhèr de cài hěn pián yi yě hěn hǎo chī
Word guide: 这儿 – here; 菜 – food; 很 – very; 便宜 – cheap; 也 – also; 很 – very; 好吃 – tasty.

3.3.6 Recap

- **又 A 又 B** = both A and B, at the same time. Each 又 goes before its own adjective or verb.
- Pick two qualities that point the same way, and leave out 很.

Practise this pattern step by step.

3.4 ■ Subject + 比较 + Adjective (fairly, rather)

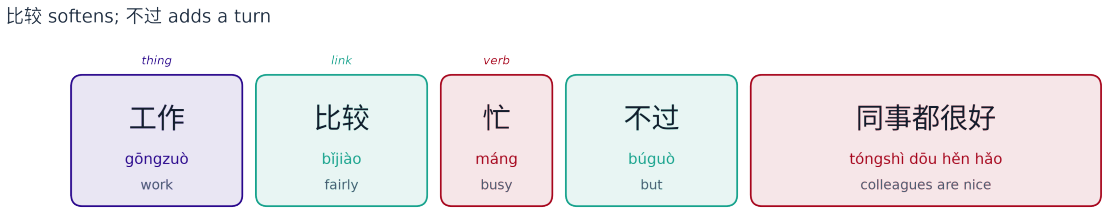
3.4.1 Not great, not terrible

- A friend asks how your new job is. It is fine, but you would not call it amazing.
- **工作比较忙，不过同事都很好。** – "The work is fairly busy, but my colleagues are all nice."

3.4.2 比较 + Adjective

- **Subject + 比较 + Adj** = "fairly, rather, relatively": 比较贵, 比较难, 比较远.
- Here 比较 is an adverb of degree, so it takes the place of 很; there is no second thing being compared.

这个问题比较难。
zhè ge wèn tí bǐ jiào nán
Word guide: 这 – this; 个 – (measure word); 问题 – question; 比较 – fairly; 难 – difficult.



3.4.3 A softer way to answer

- Answering "Is the restaurant far?": **比较远，我们打车吧。** – "It's rather far; let's take a taxi."
- 比较 also goes before some verbs of liking: **我比较喜欢喝茶。** – "I prefer tea (I like tea more)."

我比较喜欢喝茶。
wǒ bǐ jiào xǐ huan hē chá
Word guide: 我 – I; 比较 – rather; 喜欢 – like; 喝 – drinking; 茶 – tea.

3.4.4 Do not combine it with 比

- In a 比 comparison, 比较 cannot appear before the adjective: 他比我高, not 他比我比较高.
- Do not stack it with 很: 比较忙, not 很比较忙 or 比较很忙.

3.4.5 比较 as a verb

- 比较 can also be a verb meaning "to compare": **我们比较一下这两个手机。** – "Let's compare these two phones."

- Tell them apart by position: before an adjective it means “fairly”; with an object it means “compare”.

我们比较一下这两个手机。
wǒ men bǐ jiào yí xià zhè liǎng ge shǒu jī
Word guide: 我们 – we; 比较 – compare; 一下 – briefly; 这 – these; 两个 – two; 手机 – phones.

3.4.6 Recap

- **比较 + Adj** = fairly, rather; it replaces 很 and gives a moderate answer.
- It does not go inside an A 比 B sentence. With an object, 比较 is the verb “compare”.

Practise this pattern step by step.

3.5 ■ 多 + Adjective + 啊! (how ...!)

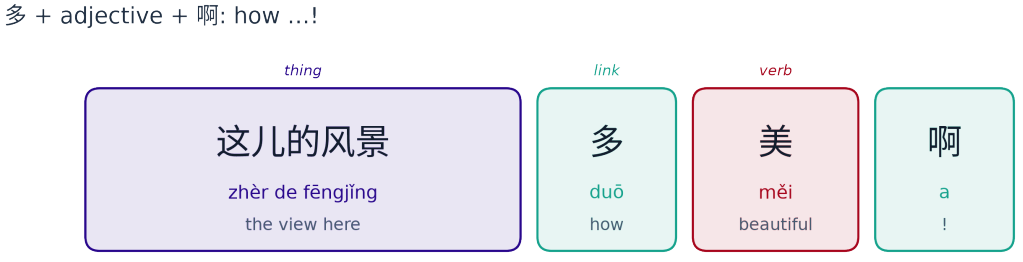
3.5.1 The view from the top

- You reach the top of a mountain and the whole city lies below you.
- **这儿的风景多美啊！** – “How beautiful the view is here!”

3.5.2 多 + Adjective + 啊!

- **多 + Adj + 啊** is an exclamation: “How … !” 多 goes before the adjective and 啊 closes the sentence.
- The adjective stands alone: 多好啊, 多快啊, 多可爱啊.

你的女儿多可爱啊！
nǐ de nǚ ér duō kě ài a
Word guide: 你 – your; 女儿 – daughter; 多 – how; 可爱 – cute.



3.5.3 Sharing a feeling

- Admiring: **你的中文说得多好啊！** – “How well you speak Chinese!”
- Complaining works too: **今天多热啊！** – “How hot it is today!”

今天多热啊！

jīn tiān duō rè a
Word guide: 今天 – today; 多 – how; 热 – hot.

3.5.4 Exclaim, do not ask

- No 很 inside: 多美啊, not 多很美啊; 多 already carries the degree.
- Keep 啊 and the exclamation mark. Without them, 多 + Adj often becomes a question: 多远? – "How far is it?"

3.5.5 多 ... 啊 versus 太 ... 了

- 太 + Adj + 了 also reacts strongly: 太美了! It is common and often means "too": 太贵了.
- 多 + Adj + 啊 is warmer and more admiring; it suits praise and wonder.

这件衣服太贵了!
zhè jiàn yī fu tài guì le
Word guide: 这 – this; 件 – (measure word); 衣服 – clothes; 太 – too; 贵 – expensive.

3.5.6 Recap

- **多 + Adj + 啊!** = How … ! An exclamation of admiration or strong feeling.
- Bare adjective, no 很; without 啊 and "! ", 多 + Adj can be a question about amount.

Practise this pattern step by step.

3.6 ■ Adjective + 的 + Noun (describing a noun)

3.6.1 Which one is yours?

- At the station a lost-property officer asks which bag is yours. You need more than "a bag".
- **我的是那个红色的大包。** – "Mine is that big red bag."

3.6.2 Adjective + 的 + Noun

- **Adj + 的 + Noun**: the description comes first and 的 links it to the noun: 漂亮的花, 有意思的书.
- Two-syllable adjectives and adjectives with 很 usually need 的: 很好的朋友, 干净的房间.

她是一个很聪明的学生。
tā shì yí ge hěn cōng ming de xué sheng
Word guide: 她 – she; 是 – is; 一 – a; 个 – (measure word); 很 – very; 聪明 – clever; 学生 – student.



3.6.3 Short fixed pairs drop 的

- Many one-syllable adjectives join the noun directly: 好人, 新车, 大城市, 红茶.
- These pairs act like single words. Adding 的 makes the description more contrastive: 我要新的, 不要旧的.

北京是一个大城市。
Běi jīng shì yí ge dà chéng shì
Word guide: 北京 – Beijing; 是 – is; 一 – a; 个 – (measure word); 大 – big; 城市 – city.

3.6.4 When 的 is needed

- Keep 的 after 很 + Adj: 很好的朋友, not 很好朋友.
- The description goes before the noun, never after: 漂亮的衣服, not 衣服漂亮的 (that is a separate sentence pattern).

3.6.5 Leaving the noun out

- When the noun is clear, Adj + 的 can stand alone: **我喜欢红的。** – "I like the red one."
- This is common in shops and choices: 大的还是小的? – "The big one or the small one?"

你要大的还是小的?
nǐ yào dà de hái shi xiǎo de
Word guide: 你 – you; 要 – want; 大 – big; 还是 – or; 小 – small.

3.6.6 Recap

- **Adj + 的 + Noun** describes a noun; the description always comes first.
- 很 + Adj and most two-syllable adjectives need 的; common one-syllable pairs (好人, 新车) do not. Adj + 的 alone = "the … one".

Practise this pattern step by step.

3.7 ■ Practice without the models

3.7.1 这么 / 那么 + Adjective (so …)

0104.1 You are holding a heavy suitcase: 你的箱子怎么 …… 重?

0104.2 A friend describes her hometown far away. Which fits best? "The mountains there are so beautiful."

- A. 那儿的山这么很漂亮。
- B. 那儿的山很那么漂亮。
- C. 那儿的山漂亮那么。
- D. 那儿的山那么漂亮。

0104.3 Build: "I am not as tall as him."

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 他 / 没有 / 那么 / 高。

0104.4 这么很热 is correct because 这么 and 很 both mean "very".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0104.5 You step outside in July and it is much hotter than you expected. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.7.2 A 跟 / 和 B 一样 (the same as)

0105.1 Complete: "This bag costs the same as that one." 这个包跟那个包 …… 贵。

0105.2 Which says "My answer is different from yours."?

- A. 我的答案跟你的没一样。
- B. 我的答案不跟你的一样。
- C. 我的答案跟你的一样不。
- D. 我的答案跟你的不一样。

0105.3 Build: "Today is as cold as yesterday."

Arrange all chunks: 一样 / 今天 / 冷。/ 跟昨天

0105.4 哥哥跟弟弟一样高 means the older brother is taller.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0105.5 Two classmates are exactly the same height, and a new teacher keeps mixing them up. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.7.3 又 ... 又 ... (both ... and ...)

0106.1 Complete: “The noodles here are both tasty and cheap.” 这儿的面条 …… 好吃 …… 便宜。(write the word that fills both blanks)

0106.2 Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他又高又帅。
- B. 他高和帅。
- C. 他又很高又很帅。
- D. 他又高帅。

0106.3 Build: “Her room is both big and clean.”

Arrange all chunks: 又大 / 又干净 / 她的房间 / 。

0106.4 这件衣服便宜和好看 is a correct way to say “This item of clothing is cheap and good-looking.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0106.5 You found a jacket that looks great and costs very little, and you want to say both at once. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.7.4 Subject + 比较 + Adjective (fairly, rather)

0107.1 A moderate answer: “Today is fairly cold.” 今天 …… 冷。

0107.2 Which sentence says “He is taller than me.”?

- A. 他比我高。
- B. 他比我比较高。
- C. 他很比我高。
- D. 他比较我高。

0107.3 Match each sentence to its meaning.

- 1. 这家饭馆比较贵。
- 1. 我们比较一下价格。
- 1. 我比较喜欢夏天。
- A. Let’s compare the prices.
- B. I prefer summer.
- C. This restaurant is rather expensive.

0107.4 Build: “It is rather far; let’s take a taxi.”

Arrange all chunks: 打车吧。/ 比较远 / ， / 我们

0107.5 A friend asks how your new job is. It is fine, but you would not call it amazing. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly

in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.7.5 多 + Adjective + 啊! (how ...!)

0108.1 Exclaim: "How nice the weather is!" 天气 …… 好啊！

0108.2 Which one asks a question instead of exclaiming?

- A. 这个公园多大?
- B. 这个公园多漂亮啊！
- C. 这个公园多大啊！
- D. 这儿多安静啊！

0108.3 Build: "How well you speak Chinese!"

Arrange all chunks: 你的中文 / 说得 / 啊！ / 多好

0108.4 多很漂亮啊！ is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0108.5 You reach the top of a mountain and the whole city lies below you. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.7.6 Adjective + 的 + Noun (describing a noun)

0109.1 Complete: "He is a very good friend." 他是我很好 …… 朋友。

0109.2 Which phrase is correct?

- A. 衣服漂亮的
- B. 漂亮很的衣服
- C. 很漂亮的衣服
- D. 很漂亮衣服

0109.3 In a shop, 我要红的 can mean "I want the red one."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0109.4 Build: "This is a very interesting book."

Arrange all chunks: 很有意思的 / 书。/ 一本 / 这是

0109.5 At the station a lost-property officer asks which bag is yours. You need more than "a bag". Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.8 ■ Answers and explanations

3.8.1 这么 / 那么 + Adjective (so ...)

0104.1 这么

The suitcase is right here, so 这么 + 重 = "so heavy".

0104.2 D. 那儿的山那么漂亮。

那么 + Adj, with no extra 很; 那么 suits a distant place.

0104.3 我没有他那么高。

A + 没有 + B + 那么 + Adj.

0104.4 False.

这么 already supplies the degree, so 很 is left out: 这么热.

0104.5 One possible response: 今天怎么这么热!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not add 很 as well: 这么热, not 这么很热, since 这么 already gives the degree.
- Place 这么 or 那么 before the adjective, not after it: 那么远, not 远那么.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3.8.2 A 跟 / 和 B 一样 (the same as)

0105.1 一样

A 跟 B 一样 + Adj. 一样贵 = "equally expensive".

0105.2 D. 我的答案跟你的不一样。

不 is placed right before 一样.

0105.3 今天跟昨天一样冷。

A + 跟 B + 一样 + Adj.

0105.4 False.

一样高 means the same height. "Taller" needs 比: 哥哥比弟弟高.

0105.5 One possible response: 哥哥跟弟弟一样高。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不 goes before 一样: 跟他不一样, not 不跟他一样 for "different from him".
- No 很 before the adjective after 一样: 一样高, not 一样很高.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3.8.3 又 … 又 … (both … and …)

0106.1 又

又好吃又便宜 – 又 before each quality.

0106.2 A. 他又高又帅。

又 + Adj + 又 + Adj with no 很. 和 does not join two adjectives in the predicate.

0106.3 她的房间又大又干净。

Subject + 又 A + 又 B.

0106.4 False.

和 joins nouns, not two adjectives used as the predicate. Use 又便宜又好看.

0106.5 One possible response: 这件衣服又便宜又好看。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use two qualities with the same direction: 又便宜又好看 is natural; 又便宜又难看 sounds odd unless you are joking.
- No 很 inside the pattern: 又高又大, not 又很高又很大.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3.8.4 Subject + 比较 + Adjective (fairly, rather)

0107.1 比较

比较 + Adj = fairly cold.

0107.2 A. 他比我高。

A 比 B + Adj. The adverb 比较 does not go inside a 比 comparison.

0107.3 1–C: 这家饭馆比较贵。= This restaurant is rather expensive.; 2–A: 我们比较一下价格。= Let's compare the prices.; 3–B: 我比较喜欢夏天。= I prefer summer.

Before an adjective or a liking verb, 比较 means "rather"; with an object such as 价格 it is the verb "compare".

0107.4 比较远，我们打车吧。

比较 + Adj, then the suggestion.

0107.5 One possible response: 工作比较忙，不过同事都很好。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- In a 比 comparison, 比较 cannot appear before the adjective: 他比我高, not 他比我比较高.
- Do not stack it with 很: 比较忙, not 很比较忙 or 比较很忙.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3.8.5 多 + Adjective + 啊! (how ...!)

0108.1 多

多 + Adj + 啊 = "How … !"

0108.2 A. 这个公园多大?

Without 啊 and the exclamation mark, 多大? asks "How big is it?"

0108.3 你的中文说得多好啊!

Verb + 得 + 多 + Adj + 啊.

0108.4 False.

多 already gives the degree, so the adjective stays bare: 多漂亮啊!

0108.5 One possible response: 这儿的风景多美啊!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很 inside: 多美啊, not 多很美啊; 多 already carries the degree.
- Keep 啊 and the exclamation mark. Without them, 多 + Adj often becomes a question: 多远? – "How far is it?"
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3.8.6 Adjective + 的 + Noun (describing a noun)

0109.1 的

很 + Adj needs 的 before the noun.

0109.2 C. 很漂亮的衣服

Description + 的 + noun, and 很 + Adj keeps 的.

0109.3 True.

When the noun is clear from context, Adj + 的 stands for "the … one".

0109.4 这是一本很有意思的书。

Number + measure word + description + 的 + noun.

0109.5 One possible response: 我的是那个红色的大包。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Keep 的 after 很 + Adj: 很好的朋友, not 很好朋友.
- The description goes before the noun, never after: 漂亮的衣服, not 衣服漂亮的 (that is a separate sentence pattern).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

4 Conjunctions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

4.1 ■ A 或者 B (or – in statements)

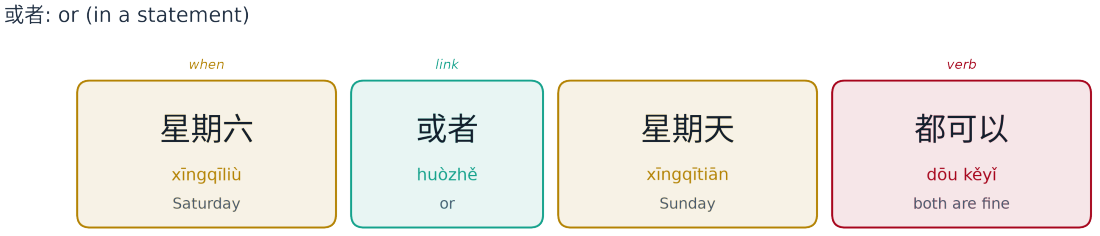
4.1.1 Either day is fine

- A friend wants to meet this weekend and asks which day suits you. Both are free.
- **星期六或者星期天都可以。** – "Saturday or Sunday are both fine."

4.1.2 A 或者 B (in statements)

- **或者** = "or" in statements, offers and suggestions: 你可以坐地铁或者打车.
- It can join nouns, verbs or whole clauses.

你可以坐地铁或者打车。
nǐ kě yǐ zuò dì tiě huò zhě dǎ chē
Word guide: 你 – you; 可以 – can; 坐 – take; 地铁 – the subway; 或者 – or; 打车 – take a taxi.



4.1.3 Choices, alternatives, either-way

- **你明天或者后天给我打电话吧。** – "Call me tomorrow or the day after."
- **周末我常常看书，或者去公园散步。** – "At weekends I often read, or go for a walk in the park."

周末我常常看书，或者去公园散步。
zhōu mò wǒ cháng cháng kàn shū huò zhě qù gōng yuán sàn bù
Word guide: 周末 – at weekends; 我 – I; 常常 – often; 看书 – read; 或者 – or; 去 – go to; 公园 – the park; 散步 – walk.

4.1.4 Not for questions

- To ask "A or B?", use 还是: 你喝茶还是咖啡？, not 你喝茶或者咖啡?
- 或者 does not mean "and": 我买了苹果和香蕉 (both), not 苹果或者香蕉.

4.1.5 或者 … 或者 …

- Repeated, it lists alternatives: **或者你来，或者我去，都行。** – “Either you come or I go – either is fine.”
- 也可以 often follows: 坐火车也可以.

或者你来，或者我去。
huò zhě nǐ lái huò zhě wǒ qù
Word guide: 或者 – either; 你 – you; 来 – come; 或者 – or; 我 – I; 去 – go.

4.1.6 Recap

- **A 或者 B** = A or B in statements and suggestions; 或者 … 或者 … = either … or ….
- Questions use 还是; “and” is 和.

Practise this pattern step by step.

4.2 ■ 那么 … (then / in that case)

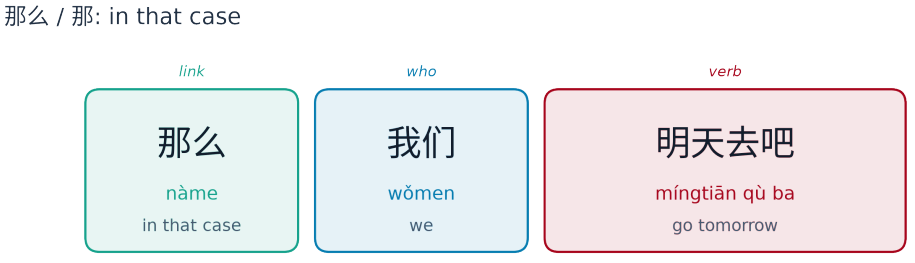
4.2.1 The cinema is full

- A friend says the cinema is fully booked tonight. You quickly suggest another plan.
- **那么，我们明天去吧。** – “In that case, let’s go tomorrow.”

4.2.2 那么 / 那 = “then, in that case”

- At the start of a reply, **那么** (spoken: **那**) draws a conclusion from what was just said.
- It often leads to a suggestion or a question: 那你打算怎么办?

那你打算怎么办?
nà nǐ dǎ suàn zěn me bàn
Word guide: 那 – then; 你 – you; 打算 – plan; 怎么办 – what to do.



4.2.3 In conversation

- A: 我不太饿。B: **那我们喝杯咖啡吧。** – "Then let's just have a coffee."
- After 如果: **如果你不喜欢，那么就换一个吧。** – "If you don't like it, then change it."

如果你不喜欢，那么就换一个吧。
rú guǒ nǐ bù xǐ huan nà me jiù huàn yí gè ba
Word guide: 如果 – if; 你 – you; 不 – don't; 喜欢 – like; 那么 – then; 就 – (then); 换 – change; 一个 – one.

4.2.4 Two different 那么

- At the start of a clause, 那么 = "then, in that case".
- Before an adjective, 那么 = "so": 那么贵. Check its position.

4.2.5 那么 versus 所以

- 所以 gives a result of a cause: 下雨了，所以我没去.
- 那么 responds to what someone else said, often with a suggestion: A: 下雨了。B: 那么我们别去了。

下雨了，所以我没去。
xià yǔ le suǒ yǐ wǒ méi qù
Word guide: 下雨 – rain; 所以 – so; 我 – I; 没 – didn't; 去 – go.

4.2.6 Recap

- **那么 / 那, ...** = then, in that case; it reacts to what was just said.
- 如果 …，那么 (就)… is common. 那么 + Adj = so.

Practise this pattern step by step.

4.3 ■ 跟 + Person + Verb (with someone)

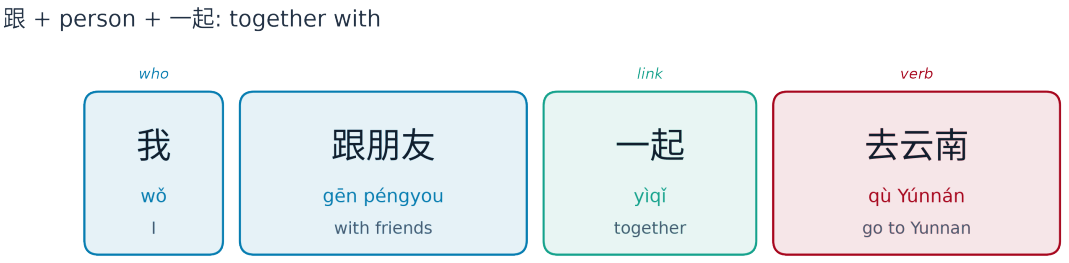
4.3.1 Who are you going with?

- Your mum asks about your plans for the holiday.
- **我跟朋友一起去云南。** – "I'm going to Yunnan with friends."

4.3.2 Subject + 跟 + Person + (一起) + Verb

- **跟 + person** = "with", placed before the verb. 一起 (together) often follows: 跟他一起吃饭.
- 和 works the same way: 我和同学一起学习.

我跟朋友一起去云南。
wǒ gēn péng you yì qǐ qù Yún nán
Word guide: 我 – I; 跟 – with; 朋友 – friends; 一起 – together; 去 – go to; 云南 – Yunnan.



4.3.3 Talking to someone

- 跟 also marks who you talk to: **我想跟你说一件事。** – "I want to tell you something."
- **你跟老师说了吗?** – "Have you told the teacher?"

我想跟你说一件事。
wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ shuō yí jiàn shì
Word guide: 我 – I; 想 – want; 跟 – to; 你 – you; 说 – tell; 一件事 – something.

4.3.4 跟 goes before the verb

- "With friends" comes before the verb: 跟朋友去, not 去跟朋友 (unless 跟 means "and" between two nouns).
- Put 不 or 没 before 跟: 我不跟他去 – "I won't go with him" – not 我跟他不去, which means "he and I are not going".

4.3.5 跟 as "and"

- Between two nouns, 跟 = "and": 我跟他都是学生 – "He and I are both students."
- Before a verb phrase, 跟 + person = "with".

我跟他都是学生。
wǒ gēn tā dōu shì xué sheng
Word guide: 我 – I; 跟 – and; 他 – he; 都 – both; 是 – are; 学生 – students.

4.3.6 Recap

- **跟 + person + (一起) + Verb** = do it with someone; 跟 + person + 说 = tell someone.
- 跟 comes before the verb; negatives go before 跟. Between nouns, 跟 = and.

Practise this pattern step by step.

4.4 ■ A 还是 B? (or – in questions)

4.4.1 Tea or coffee?

- A waiter asks what you would like to drink.
- **您喝茶还是喝咖啡?** – "Would you like tea or coffee?"

4.4.2 A 还是 B? (choice question)

- **A 还是 B?** asks someone to choose; no 吗 is needed.
- It can join nouns, verbs or clauses: 你今天去还是明天去?

你今天去还是明天去?
nǐ jīn tiān qù hái shi míng tiān qù
Word guide: 你 – you; 今天 – today; 去 – go; 还是 – or; 明天 – tomorrow; 去 – go.



4.4.3 是 ... 还是 ...

- With 是: **你是老师还是学生?** – "Are you a teacher or a student?"
- **我们坐地铁还是打车?** – "Shall we take the subway or a taxi?"

你是老师还是学生?
nǐ shì lǎo shī hái shi xué sheng
Word guide: 你 – you; 是 – are; 老师 – a teacher; 还是 – or; 学生 – a student.

4.4.4 No 吗 with 还是

- 还是 already makes a question: 你喝茶还是咖啡? , not 你喝茶还是咖啡吗?
- In a statement, "or" is 或者: 茶或者咖啡都可以.

4.4.5 还是 in "I don't know whether ..."

- After 不知道 or 决定, 还是 keeps its "whether … or" meaning: **我不知道他来还是不来。** – "I don't know whether he's coming or not."
- 还是 can also mean "had better": 还是走吧 – "We'd better go."

我不知道他来还是不来。
wǒ bù zhī dào tā lái hái shi bù lái
Word guide: 我 – I; 不 – don't; 知道 – know; 他 – he; 来 – comes; 还是 – or; 不 – not;

来 – come.

4.4.6 Recap

- **A 还是 B?** = A or B? (a choice question, no 吗).
- In statements use 或者; 不知道 A 还是 B = don't know whether A or B.

Practise this pattern step by step.

4.5 ■ Practice without the models

4.5.1 A 或者 B (or – in statements)

0701.1 Complete: "You can pay in cash or by card." 你可以付现金 …… 刷卡。

0701.2 Which asks "Do you want tea or coffee?"

- A. 你要茶或者咖啡?
- B. 你要茶和咖啡?
- C. 你要茶或者咖啡吗还是?
- D. 你要茶还是咖啡?

0701.3 Build: "Call me tomorrow or the day after."

Arrange all chunks: 给我 / 明天或者后天 / 你 / 打电话吧。

0701.4 我买了苹果或者香蕉 means "I bought apples and bananas."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0701.5 A friend wants to meet this weekend and asks which day suits you. Both are free. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

4.5.2 那么 ... (then / in that case)

0702.1 A: "I'm not free today." B: "Then let's meet tomorrow." …… 我们明天见吧。

0702.2 In 这件衣服那么贵, what does 那么 mean?

- A. or
- B. because
- C. then
- D. so

0702.3 Build: "If you don't like it, then change it."

Arrange all chunks: 就换 / ， 那么 / 一个吧。/ 如果你不喜欢

0702.4 那么 at the start of a reply usually responds to what someone else has just said.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0702.5 A friend says the cinema is fully booked tonight. You quickly suggest another plan. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

4.5.3 跟 + Person + Verb (with someone)

0703.1 Complete: "I play basketball with my brother." 我 …… 哥哥一起打篮球。

0703.2 Which says "I won't go with him."?

- A. 我跟他不去。
- B. 我去不跟他。
- C. 我不跟他去。
- D. 我跟不他去。

0703.3 Build: "I want to tell you something."

Arrange all chunks: 我想 / 说 / 跟你 / 一件事。

0703.4 In 我跟他都是学生, 跟 means "and".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0703.5 Your mum asks about your plans for the holiday. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

4.5.4 A 还是 B? (or – in questions)

0704.1 Ask: "Are you going today or tomorrow?" 你今天去 …… 明天去?

0704.2 Which question is correct?

- A. 你是中国人或者韩国人?
- B. 你是中国人还是韩国人?
- C. 你是中国人还是韩国人吗?
- D. 你是中国人吗还是韩国人?

0704.3 Build: "Shall we take the subway or a taxi?"

Arrange all chunks: 坐地铁 / 还是 / 打车? / 我们

0704.4 我不知道他来还是不来 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0704.5 A waiter asks what you would like to drink. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

4.6 ■ Answers and explanations

4.6.1 A 或者 B (or – in statements)

0701.1 或者

A statement offering alternatives uses 或者.

0701.2 D. 你要茶还是咖啡?

An "A or B?" question uses 还是.

0701.3 你明天或者后天给我打电话吧。

Time A 或者 time B + verb phrase.

0701.4 False.

或者 is "or"; "and" is 和.

0701.5 One possible response: 星期六或者星期天都可以。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- To ask "A or B?", use 还是: 你喝茶还是咖啡？, not 你喝茶或者咖啡?
- 或者 does not mean "and": 我买了苹果和香蕉 (both), not 苹果或者香蕉.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

4.6.2 那么 ... (then / in that case)

0702.1 那

那 (么) at the start of a reply = in that case.

0702.2 D. so

Before an adjective, 那么 = so.

0702.3 如果你不喜欢，那么就换一个吧。

如果 …，那么就 ….

0702.4 True.

It draws a conclusion from the situation just described.

0702.5 One possible response: 那么，我们明天去吧。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- At the start of a clause, 那么 = "then, in that case".
- Before an adjective, 那么 = "so": 那么贵. Check its position.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

4.6.3 跟 + Person + Verb (with someone)

0703.1 跟

跟 + person + 一起 + verb.

0703.2 C. 我不跟他去。

The negative goes before 跟. 我跟他不去 means "he and I are not going", a different message.

0703.3 我想跟你说一件事。

跟 + person + 说.

0703.4 True.

Between two nouns, 跟 joins them.

0703.5 One possible response: 我跟朋友一起去云南。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "With friends" comes before the verb: 跟朋友去, not 去跟朋友 (unless 跟 means "and" between two nouns).
- Put 不 or 没 before 跟: 我不跟他去 – "I won't go with him" – not 我跟他不去, which means "he and I are not going".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

4.6.4 A 还是 B? (or – in questions)

0704.1 还是

还是 joins the choices in a question.

0704.2 B. 你是中国人还是韩国人?

还是 questions take no 吗.

0704.3 我们坐地铁还是打车?

A 还是 B?

0704.4 True.

After 不知道, 还是 means "whether … or".

0704.5 One possible response: 您喝茶还是喝咖啡?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 还是 already makes a question: 你喝茶还是咖啡？, not 你喝茶还是咖啡吗?
- In a statement, “or” is 或者: 茶或者咖啡都可以.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5 Nouns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

5.1 ■ Time / Verb + 以前 (before ...)

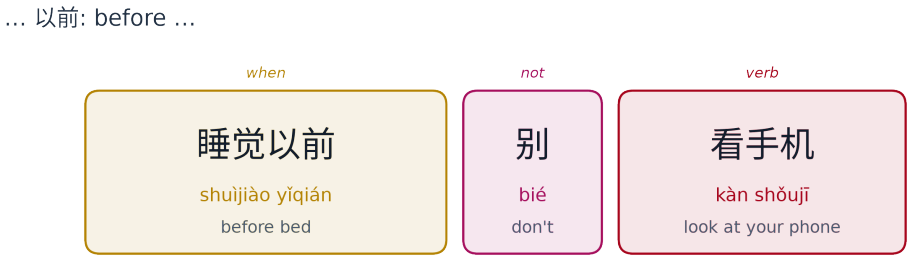
5.1.1 Before you go to bed

- Your doctor gives you advice about a good night's sleep.
- **睡觉以前别看手机。** – "Don't look at your phone before going to bed."

5.1.2 Time / Verb phrase + 以前

- **X + 以前** = "before X". Unlike English, 以前 comes after the time or action: 八点以前, 上课以前.
- The whole phrase usually comes before the main verb: 你八点以前来吧.

你八点以前来吧。
nǐ bā diǎn yǐ qián lái ba
Word guide: 你 – you; 八点 – eight o'clock; 以前 – before; 来 – come.



5.1.3 Deadlines and order

- **星期五以前要交作业。** – "The homework must be handed in before Friday."
- **吃饭以前要洗手。** – "Wash your hands before you eat." 前 alone can replace 以前 in short phrases: 饭前, 睡前.

吃饭以前要洗手。
chī fàn yǐ qián yào xǐ shǒu
Word guide: 吃饭 – eat; 以前 – before; 要 – must; 洗手 – wash hands.

5.1.4 以前 comes last

- Put 以前 after what it refers to: 上课以前, not 以前上课 (which means "in the past, I attended class").

- The 以前 phrase goes before the main verb, not at the end: 我十点以前回家, not 我回家十点以前.

5.1.5 以前 versus 前

- 以前 works after any time or action: 三天以前, 出国以前.
- 前 is shorter and fixed in some phrases: 三天前, 睡前, 饭前. Both mean "before" here.

我三天前到北京。
wǒ sān tiān qián dào Běi jīng
Word guide: 我 – I; 三天 – three days; 前 – ago; 到 – arrived in; 北京 – Beijing.

5.1.6 Recap

- **Time / action + 以前** = before …; it follows what it refers to.
- The phrase sits before the main verb. 前 is a shorter form: 三天前, 睡前.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.2 ■ 以前，… (in the past, …)

5.2.1 How things used to be

- Your grandmother looks at old photos of her village with dirt roads and no cars.
- **以前这儿没有路，现在有很多车了。** – "There used to be no road here; now there are lots of cars."

5.2.2 以前，… = "in the past, …"

- **以前** at the start of the sentence (or after the subject) = "before, in the past", often contrasted with 现在.
- It describes a past habit or state: 我以前住在上海 – "I used to live in Shanghai."

我以前住在上海。
wǒ yǐ qián zhù zài Shàng hǎi
Word guide: 我 – I; 以前 – used to; 住 – live; 在 – in; 上海 – Shanghai.

以前 … 现在 …: then and now



5.2.3 Then and now

- **他以前不喜欢吃辣的，现在很喜欢。** – "He didn't use to like spicy food; now he loves it."
- The contrast with 现在 is very common; often no 了 is needed for a past habit.

他以前不喜欢吃辣的。
tā yǐ qián bù xǐ huan chī là de
Word guide: 他 – he; 以前 – used to; 不 – not; 喜欢 – like; 吃 – eat; 辣 – spicy; 的 – food.

5.2.4 Which 以前 is it?

- Alone at the front or after the subject, 以前 = "in the past": 以前我不会做饭.
- After a time or action, it = "before": 上课以前 – "before class". Check what comes before it.

5.2.5 以前 versus 过去 and 原来

- 过去 also means "in the past", a little more formal: 过去这里是一个小村子。
- 原来 = "originally", stressing that it later changed: 他原来是老师，后来当了作家。

他原来是老师。
tā yuán lái shì lǎo shī
Word guide: 他 – he; 原来 – originally; 是 – was; 老师 – a teacher.

5.2.6 Recap

- **以前，...** = in the past, used to ...; often contrasted with 现在.
- X + 以前 = before X. 过去 = in the past (formal); 原来 = originally.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.3 ■ 刚才 (a moment ago)

5.3.1 A missed call

- You come back from the shower and see your roommate pointing at your phone.
- **刚才有人给你打电话了。** – "Someone called you a moment ago."

5.3.2 刚才 is a time word

- **刚才** = "just now, a moment ago". Like 昨天 or 今天, it can stand before or after the subject.
- 刚才我在洗澡 / 我刚才在洗澡 – "I was in the shower just now."

我刚才在洗澡。
wǒ gāng cái zài xǐ zǎo
Word guide: 我 – I; 刚才 – just now; 在 – (ongoing); 洗澡 – take a shower.



5.3.3 Actions, states and the negative

- Action: **你刚才去哪儿了?** – "Where did you go just now?"
- State or negative: 刚才很安静 – "It was quiet a moment ago." 刚才我没听见 – "I didn't hear just now."

你刚才去哪儿了?
nǐ gāng cái qù nǎr le
Word guide: 你 – you; 刚才 – just now; 去 – go; 哪儿 – where.

5.3.4 刚才 is only minutes ago

- Use 刚才 for a moment ago in the same situation; for "recently" over days, use 最近 or 刚.
- 刚才 can go first in the sentence; 刚 cannot: 刚才他来了 ✓, 刚他来了 ×.

5.3.5 刚才 versus 刚

- 刚 is an adverb before the verb: 他刚走 – "He has just left."
- 刚才 is a time word: 他刚才走了 – "He left a moment ago." Both are common; only 刚才 works with adjectives and 没.

他刚走。
tā gāng zǒu
Word guide: 他 – he; 刚 – just; 走 – leave.

5.3.6 Recap

- **刚才** = a moment ago; a time word that can start the sentence.
- It works with actions, adjectives and 没. 刚 is the adverb "just" before a verb.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.4 ■ Time / Verb + 时 (when …)

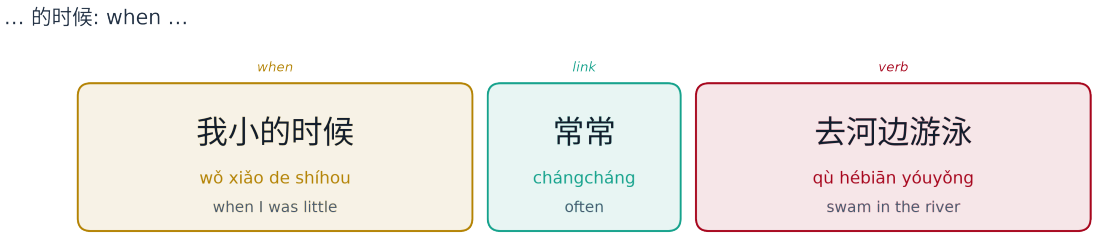
5.4.1 When I was little

- You are telling a friend a story from your childhood about learning to swim.
- **我小的时候常常去河边游泳。** – "When I was little, I often went swimming by the river."

5.4.2 Time / Verb phrase + 时 (的时候)

- **X + 的时候** = "when X". The spoken form is 的时候; the shorter **时** is more written: 上课时, 下雨时.
- Like 以前, 时 comes after what it refers to.

上课时，请关手机。
shàng kè shí qǐng guān shǒu jī
Word guide: 上课 – in class; 时 – when; 请 – please; 关 – turn off; 手机 – your phone.



5.4.3 Spoken 的时候

- **我到家的时候，他已经睡了。** – "When I got home, he was already asleep."
- **你有空的时候给我打电话。** – "Call me when you have time."

我到家的时候，他已经睡了。
wǒ dào jiā de shí hou tā yǐ jīng shuì le
Word guide: 我 – I; 到 – arrive; 家 – home; 的时候 – when; 他 – he; 已经 – already; 睡 – sleep.

5.4.4 Order and the right word

- 时 / 的时候 goes after the clause: 下雨的时候, not 时候下雨.
- In a "when" clause, do not use 什么时候 (that asks "when?"): 我到家的时候, not 我什么时候到家.

5.4.5 时 versus 的时候

- Use 的时候 in conversation: 吃饭的时候别说话.
- 时 suits signs, writing and short fixed phrases: 用餐时请勿吸烟 – "No smoking while dining."

吃饭的时候别说话。
chī fàn de shí hou bié shuō huà
Word guide: 吃饭 – eat; 的时候 – when; 别 – don't; 说话 – talk.

5.4.6 Recap

- **X + 的时候 / 时** = when X; it follows the clause it belongs to.
- 的时候 is spoken, 时 is more written. 什么时候 asks a question; it is not "when" in a statement.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.5 ■ 以后 (after / in the future)

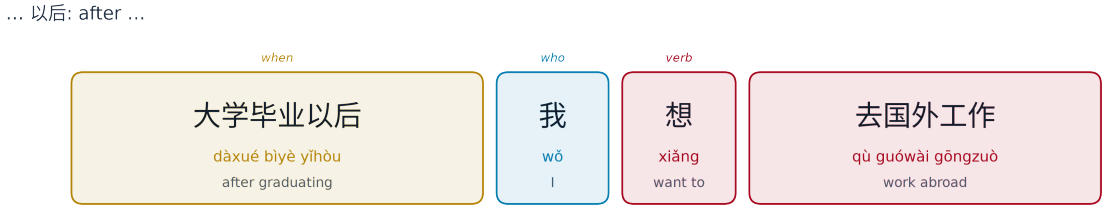
5.5.1 After graduation

- A friend in her final year asks what you plan to do once you finish university.
- **大学毕业以后，我想去国外工作。** – "After I graduate, I want to work abroad."

5.5.2 Time / Verb phrase + 以后

- **X + 以后** = "after X": 下课以后, 吃了饭以后, 三天以后.
- Like 以前, it follows what it refers to, and the phrase comes before the main verb.

下课以后，我们去食堂吧。
xià kè yǐ hòu wǒ men qù shí táng ba
Word guide: 下课 – class ends; 以后 – after; 我们 – we; 去 – go to; 食堂 – the canteen.



5.5.3 以后 alone: from now on, in the future

- At the start of a sentence, 以后 = "in the future, from now on": **以后我不迟到了。** – "I won't be late again from now on."
- 以后 here refers to time after now, not after a past event.

以后我不迟到了。
yǐ hòu wǒ bù chí dào le
Word guide: 以后 – from now on; 我 – I; 不 – not; 迟到 – be late.

5.5.4 After what?

- Put 以后 after the event: 吃饭以后, not 以后吃饭 (which would mean “eat in the future”).
- For the next step in a past story, prefer 后来 or 然后, not a bare 以后: 我先去了银行，然后去了超市.

5.5.5 以后 versus 后

- 后 is the shorter form in fixed phrases: 饭后, 三天后, 毕业后.
- 以后 is more common in speech and after longer clauses: 你到了以后给我打电话。

你到了以后给我打电话。
nǐ dào le yǐ hòu gěi wǒ dǎ diàn huà
Word guide: 你 – you; 到 – arrive; 以后 – after; 给 – to; 我 – me; 打 – make; 电话 – a call.

5.5.6 Recap

- **X + 以后** = after X; **以后，…** alone = in the future, from now on.
- For “and then” in a past story, use 然后 or 后来.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.6 ■ …，后来 … (afterwards / later – past)

5.6.1 How the story ended

- You are telling a friend about a classmate who moved to Shenzhen two years ago.
- **他去了深圳，后来在那儿开了一家公司。** – “He went to Shenzhen, and later he started a company there.”

5.6.2 …，后来 … (afterwards, later on)

- **后来** = “afterwards, later on”, for what happened next in a past story.
- It starts the second clause, after a comma: 我们先是同学，后来成了好朋友.

我们先是同学，后来成了好朋友。
wǒ men xiān shì tóng xué hòu lái chéng le hǎo péng you
Word guide: 我们 – we; 先 – first; 是 – were; 同学 – classmates; 后来 – later; 成 – became; 好朋友 – good friends.



5.6.3 Asking what happened next

- **后来呢?** – "And then what happened?" A natural way to keep a story going.
- **后来怎么样了?** – "How did it turn out in the end?"

后来怎么样了?
hòu lái zěn me yàng le
Word guide: 后来 – later; 怎么样 – how.

5.6.4 Past stories only

- 后来 is only for the past. For "later" in a plan, use 以后 or 然后: 我们以后再说.
- It stands alone as a time word; it is not added after an event: 毕业以后, not 毕业后来.

5.6.5 后来 versus 然后

- 然后 links steps closely, one after another, in the past or future: 先洗手，然后吃饭。
- 后来 jumps forward in a story, often with a gap of time: 他小时候很瘦，后来长胖了。

他小时候很瘦，后来长胖了。
tā xiǎo shí hou hěn shòu hòu lái zhǎng pàng le
Word guide: 他 – he; 小时候 – as a child; 很 – very; 瘦 – thin; 后来 – later; 长 – grow; 胖 – fat.

5.6.6 Recap

- **...，后来 ...** = afterwards, later on, in a past story; 后来呢? = And then?
- Not for plans (use 以后 / 然后), not after an event (毕业以后).

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.7 ■ Practice without the models

5.7.1 Time / Verb + 以前 (before ...)

0501.1 Complete: "Please come back before ten." 请十点 …… 回来。

0501.2 Which says "Turn off the light before you leave."?

- A. 走以前关灯。
- B. 走关灯以前。
- C. 以前走关灯。
- D. 关灯走以前。

0501.3 Build: "The homework must be handed in before Friday."

Arrange all chunks: 以前 / 星期五 / 作业。/ 要交

0501.4 三天前 and 三天以前 both mean "three days ago".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0501.5 Your doctor gives you advice about a good night's sleep. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.7.2 以前，... (in the past, ...)

0502.1 Complete: "I used to be very shy." 我 …… 很害羞。

0502.2 Match each sentence to its meaning.

- 1. 以前我不喝咖啡。
- 1. 喝咖啡以前，我先吃早饭。
- A. Before drinking coffee I eat breakfast.
- B. I didn't use to drink coffee.

0502.3 Build: "He didn't use to like spicy food."

Arrange all chunks: 不喜欢 / 吃辣的。 / 他 / 以前

0502.4 原来 stresses that the situation later changed.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0502.5 Your grandmother looks at old photos of her village with dirt roads and no cars. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.7.3 刚才 (a moment ago)

0503.1 Complete: "It was raining just now; now it has stopped." …… 在下雨，现在停了。

0503.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 刚才他很忙。
- B. 他很刚忙。
- C. 他忙刚才很。
- D. 刚他很忙。

0503.3 Build: "Where did you go just now?"

Arrange all chunks: 去哪儿 / 了? / 刚才 / 你

0503.4 刚才 is a good choice for "I moved house recently."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0503.5 You come back from the shower and see your roommate pointing at your phone. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.7.4 Time / Verb + 时 (when …)

0504.1 Complete: “When I got home, he was already asleep.” 我到家 ……，他已经睡了。

0504.2 Which says “Call me when you have time.”?

- A. 你什么时候有空给我打电话。
- B. 你有空的时候给我打电话。
- C. 你给我打电话有空的时候。
- D. 时候你有空给我打电话。

0504.3 Build: “In class, please turn off your phone.”

Arrange all chunks: 请关 / 手机。/ ， / 上课时

0504.4 时 is more common than 的时候 in everyday conversation.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0504.5 You are telling a friend a story from your childhood about learning to swim. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.7.5 以后 (after / in the future)

0505.1 Complete: “Call me after you arrive.” 你到了 …… 给我打电话。

0505.2 What does 以后我会早点儿睡 mean?

- A. I used to go to bed early.
- B. I went to bed early afterwards.
- C. From now on I’ll go to bed earlier.
- D. I went to bed after eating.

0505.3 Build: “After I graduate from university, I want to work abroad.”

Arrange all chunks: 大学毕业 / 去国外工作。/ ， 我想 / 以后

0505.4 以后吃饭 means “after eating”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0505.5 A friend in her final year asks what you plan to do once you finish university. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.7.6 ... ，后来 ... (afterwards / later – past)

0506.1 Complete the story: “At first I didn’t like him, but later we became friends.” 开始我不喜欢他，…… 我们成了朋友。

0506.2 Which fits a plan? “Let’s eat first, then go shopping.”

- A. 我们后来吃饭，先去买东西。
- B. 我们先吃饭，然后去买东西。
- C. 我们先吃饭，后来去买东西。
- D. 我们吃饭后来，去买东西。

0506.3 Ask to continue a story: “And how did it turn out?”

Arrange all chunks: 怎么样 / 后来 / 了?

0506.4 他小时候很瘦，后来长胖了 describes a change with a gap of time.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0506.5 You are telling a friend about a classmate who moved to Shenzhen two years ago. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.8 ■ Answers and explanations

5.8.1 Time / Verb + 以前 (before ...)

0501.1 以前

Time + 以前 = before that time.

0501.2 A. 走以前关灯。

Action + 以前, then the main verb.

0501.3 星期五以前要交作业。

Time + 以前 + verb phrase.

0501.4 True.

前 is a shorter form of 以前 after a time.

0501.5 One possible response: 睡觉以前别看手机。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 以前 after what it refers to: 上课以前, not 以前上课 (which means "in the past, I attended class").
- The 以前 phrase goes before the main verb, not at the end: 我十点以前回家, not 我回家十点以前.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.8.2 以前，... (in the past, ...)

0502.1 以前

Subject + 以前 + description = used to be.

0502.2 1–B: 以前我不喝咖啡。= I didn't use to drink coffee.; 2–A: 喝咖啡以前，我先吃早饭。= Before drinking coffee I eat breakfast.

Alone, 以前 means "in the past"; after an action it means "before".

0502.3 他以前不喜欢吃辣的。

Subject + 以前 + verb phrase.

0502.4 True.

原来 = originally (and then it changed).

0502.5 One possible response: 以前这儿没有路，现在有很多车了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- Alone at the front or after the subject, 以前 = "in the past": 以前我不会做饭.
- After a time or action, it = "before": 上课以前 – "before class". Check what comes before it.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.8.3 刚才 (a moment ago)

0503.1 刚才

刚才 is a time word that can start the sentence.

0503.2 A. 刚才他很忙。

刚才 can describe a state a moment ago; 刚 is not used for a past state like 很忙.

0503.3 你刚才去哪儿了?

Subject + 刚才 + verb phrase.

0503.4 False.

刚才 is only a moment ago; recently is 最近 (or 刚搬家).

0503.5 One possible response: 刚才有人给你打电话了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 刚才 for a moment ago in the same situation; for "recently" over days, use 最近 or 刚.
- 刚才 can go first in the sentence; 刚 cannot: 刚才他来了 ✓, 刚他来了 ×.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.8.4 Time / Verb + 时 (when ...)

0504.1 的时候

Clause + 的时候 = when.

0504.2 B. 你有空的时候给我打电话。

The 的时候 clause comes first; 什么时候 asks "when?".

0504.3 上课时，请关手机。

Clause + 时, then the request.

0504.4 False.

的时候 is the usual spoken form; 时 is more written.

0504.5 One possible response: 我小的时候常常去河边游泳。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 时 / 的时候 goes after the clause: 下雨的时候, not 时候下雨.
- In a "when" clause, do not use 什么时候 (that asks "when?"): 我到家的时候, not 我什么时候到家.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.8.5 以后 (after / in the future)

0505.1 以后

Event + 以后 = after that event.

0505.2 C. From now on I'll go to bed earlier.

以后 alone at the start refers to the future.

0505.3 大学毕业以后，我想去国外工作。

Event + 以后, then the main clause.

0505.4 False.

After eating is 吃饭以后; 以后吃饭 means "eat in the future".

0505.5 One possible response: 大学毕业以后，我想去国外工作。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 以后 after the event: 吃饭以后, not 以后吃饭 (which would mean "eat in the future").
- For the next step in a past story, prefer 后来 or 然后, not a bare 以后: 我先去了银行，然后去了超市.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.8.6 ... ，后来 ... (afterwards / later – past)

0506.1 后来

后来 introduces what happened later in a past story.

0506.2 B. 我们先吃饭，然后去买东西。

后来 is only for past stories; a plan uses 然后.

0506.3 后来怎么样了?

后来怎么样了?

0506.4 True.

后来 jumps forward in a past story.

0506.5 One possible response: 他去了深圳，后来在那儿开了一家公司。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 后来 is only for the past. For "later" in a plan, use 以后 or 然后: 我们以后再说.
- It stands alone as a time word; it is not added after an event: 毕业以后, not 毕业后来.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

6 Numbers

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

6.1 ■ Approximating with sequential numbers

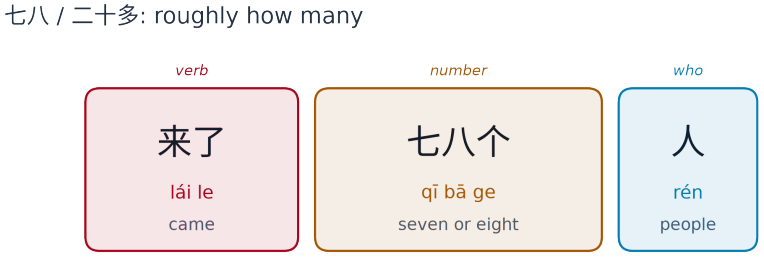
6.1.1 About how many?

- Your teacher asks how many people came to the club meeting. You did not count exactly.
- **来了七八个人。** – "Seven or eight people came."

6.1.2 Two neighbouring numbers

- **Two numbers side by side** = "about, roughly": 三四个, 五六天, 七八个人. The measure word follows both.
- Use numbers that are next to each other, smaller first.

我去了三四次。
wǒ qù le sān sì cì
Word guide: 我 – I; 去 – go; 三四 – three or four; 次 – times.



6.1.3 几 and 多 for "-something" and "over"

- **十几 / 几十**: 十几个 = "a dozen or so (11–19)", 几十个 = "dozens".
- **Number + 多**: 二十多个人 = "twenty-odd people", 一百多块 = "a hundred and something yuan".

这件衣服一百多块。
zhè jiàn yī fu yì bǎi duō kuài
Word guide: 这 – this; 件 – (measure word); 衣服 – clothes; 一百 – a hundred; 多 – and more; 块 – yuan.

6.1.4 Where the measure word goes

- The measure word comes after both numbers: 三四个人, not 三个四个人.
- With 多 and round tens, 多 goes before the measure word: 二十多个, not 二十个多 (for amounts under ten, 多 follows the measure word: 三个多小时).

6.1.5 左右 and 差不多

- **左右** after a number = "around": 三十岁左右 – "around thirty years old".
- **差不多** before a number = "about, nearly": 差不多五十个人.

他三十岁左右。
tā sān shí suì zuǒ yòu
Word guide: 他 – he; 三十 – thirty; 岁 – years old; 左右 – around.

6.1.6 Recap

- **Neighbouring numbers** (三四个, 七八天) = about; **十几** = 11–19; **几十** = dozens; **二十多** = twenty-odd.
- The measure word follows; 左右 after or 差不多 before a number also mean "about".

Practise this pattern step by step.

6.2 ■ Big numbers: 万 / 亿

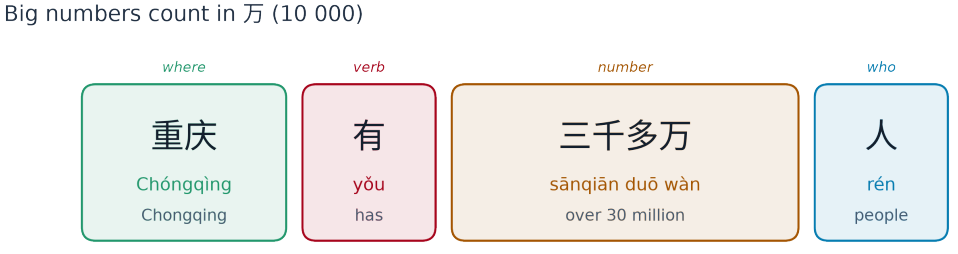
6.2.1 How many people live there?

- You read that the city of Chongqing has about thirty million people and wonder how to say it.
- **重庆有三千多万人。** – "Chongqing has over thirty million people."

6.2.2 Count in 万 (ten thousand)

- **万** = 10,000. Chinese groups big numbers in fours: 一万 (10,000), 十万 (100,000), 一百万 (1,000,000), 一千万 (10,000,000).
- 两万五千 = 25,000; 三十万 = 300,000.

这辆车十五万块。
zhè liàng chē shí wǔ wàn kuài
Word guide: 这 – this; 辆 – (measure word); 车 – car; 十五万 – 150,000; 块 – yuan.



6.2.3 亿 (a hundred million)

- **亿** = 100,000,000: 中国有十四亿人 – "China has 1.4 billion people."
- 十亿 = one billion; 一百亿 = ten billion.

中国有十四亿人。
Zhōng guó yǒu shí sì yì rén
Word guide: 中国 – China; 有 – has; 十四亿 – 1.4 billion; 人 – people.

6.2.4 Don't count in thousands

- 100,000 is 十万, not 一百千: Chinese has no "hundred thousand" unit, so regroup by fours.
- A million is 一百万, not 一万万; 一万万 is an old word for 一亿.

6.2.5 Converting quickly

- Move four places for 万: 2,000,000 → 200|0000 → 两百万.
- Move eight places for 亿: 300,000,000 → 3|0000|0000 → 三亿.

两百万人。
liǎng bǎi wàn rén
Word guide: 两百万 – two million; 人 – people.

6.2.6 Recap

- **万** = 10,000 and **亿** = 100,000,000; group large numbers in fours.
- 十万 = 100,000, 一百万 = a million, 十亿 = a billion.

Practise this pattern step by step.

6.3 ■ Times to the minute (点 … 分)

6.3.1 When does the train leave?

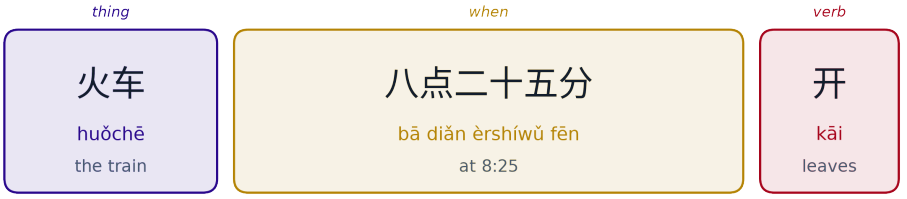
- You are buying a train ticket and the clerk tells you the departure time.
- **火车八点二十五分开。** – "The train leaves at 8:25."

6.3.2 Number + 点 + Number + 分

- **X 点 Y 分** = X:Y. 八点二十五分 = 8:25. In speech 分 is often dropped after ten minutes: 八点二十五.
- For 1–9 minutes, add 零 (líng): 八点零五分 = 8:05.

现在是三点零五分。
xiàn zài shì sān diǎn líng wǔ fēn
Word guide: 现在 – now; 是 – is; 三点 – three o'clock; 零 – zero; 五分 – five minutes.

点 + 分: clock time



6.3.3 半, 刻 and 差

- **半** = half past: 七点半 = 7:30. **刻** = quarter: 九点一刻 = 9:15, 九点三刻 = 9:45.
- **差** = "to": 差五分十点 = five to ten (9:55).

我们七点半见面吧。
wǒ men qī diǎn bàn jiàn miàn ba
Word guide: 我们 – we; 七点半 – half past seven; 见面 – meet.

6.3.4 The time comes before the verb

- Put the clock time before the verb: 我七点起床, not 我起床七点.
- Say 两点 for 2:00, not 二点.

6.3.5 Morning, afternoon, evening

- Add the part of the day first: 早上六点, 下午三点, 晚上十点.
- **下午两点一刻** – "2:15 p.m." The larger unit always comes first.

下午两点一刻。
xià wǔ liǎng diǎn yí kè
Word guide: 下午 – afternoon; 两点 – two o'clock; 一刻 – a quarter.

6.3.6 Recap

- **X 点 Y 分**; 零 for 1–9 minutes; 半 = :30, 一刻 = :15, 三刻 = :45; 差 = to.
- Part of the day first (下午两点), time before the verb, 两点 not 二点.

Practise this pattern step by step.

6.4 ■ Telling the hour (Number + 点)

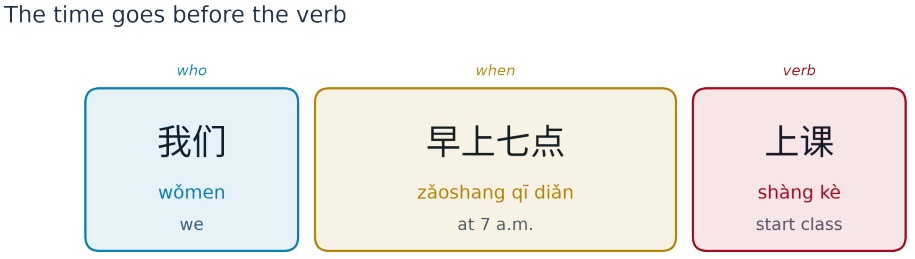
6.4.1 An early start

- Your new school timetable starts much earlier than you are used to.
- **我们早上七点上课。** – "We start class at seven in the morning."

6.4.2 Number + 点 (o'clock)

- **Number + 点** = o'clock: 一点, 三点, 十二点. Ask with **几点**: 现在几点? – "What time is it?"
- 2 o'clock is **两点**, never 二点.

现在几点?
xiàn zài jǐ diǎn
Word guide: 现在 – now; 几点 – what time.



6.4.3 Saying when something happens

- **你几点下班?** – "What time do you finish work?" **我六点下班。** – "I finish at six."
- Part of the day goes first: 晚上九点, 中午十二点.

我晚上九点睡觉。
wǒ wǎn shang jiǔ diǎn shuì jiào
Word guide: 我 – I; 晚上 – in the evening; 九点 – nine o'clock; 睡觉 – go to bed.

6.4.4 Order matters

- The time goes before the verb: 我六点下班, not 我下班六点.
- Use 两点 for 2 o'clock, not 二点.

6.4.5 点 versus 小时

- 点 is a point on the clock: 三点 = 3 o'clock.
- 小时 is a length of time: 三个小时 = three hours. 我三点开始，学了三个小时。

我学了三个小时。
wǒ xué le sān gè xiǎo shí
Word guide: 我 – I; 学 – study; 三个 – three; 小时 – hours.

6.4.6 Recap

- **Number + 点** = o'clock; 几点 asks the time; 2:00 = 两点.
- Part of the day first, time before the verb; 小时 measures a length of time.

Practise this pattern step by step.

6.5 ■ Practice without the models

6.5.1 Approximating with sequential numbers

0507.1 Complete: “There are a dozen or so students in the class.” 班里有 …… 个学生。

0507.2 Which says “five or six days”?

- A. 五个六天
- B. 六五天
- C. 五天六天
- D. 五六天

0507.3 Match each phrase to its meaning.

- 1. 二十多个
- 1. 几十个
- 1. 三十岁左右
- 1. 七八个
- A. seven or eight
- B. twenty-odd
- C. around thirty years old
- D. dozens

0507.4 Build: “Seven or eight people came.”

Arrange all chunks: 人。 / 来了 / 个 / 七八

0507.5 Your teacher asks how many people came to the club meeting. You did not count exactly. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

6.5.2 Big numbers: 万 / 亿

0508.1 Write 50,000 in Chinese: ……

0508.2 How do you say 100,000?

- A. 一万
- B. 一百万
- C. 十万
- D. 一百千

0508.3 Match the numbers.

- 1. 一万
- 1. 一百万
- 1. 一亿

- 1. 十亿
- A. 1,000,000,000
- B. 1,000,000
- C. 10,000
- D. 100,000,000

0508.4 一千万 means ten million.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0508.5 You read that the city of Chongqing has about thirty million people and wonder how to say it. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

6.5.3 Times to the minute (点 … 分)

0509.1 Write 10:30 with 半: 十点 ……

0509.2 What time is 差十分九点?

- A. 10:09
- B. 8:50
- C. 9:10
- D. 9:50

0509.3 Build: "I get up at a quarter past six."

Arrange all chunks: 早上 / 六点一刻 / 我 / 起床。

0509.4 8:05 is said 八点五分 with no 零.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0509.5 You are buying a train ticket and the clerk tells you the departure time. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

6.5.4 Telling the hour (Number + 点)

0510.1 Ask: "What time is it now?" 现在 …… 点?

0510.2 How do you say "2 o'clock in the afternoon"?

- A. 下午两点
- B. 下午二点
- C. 下午两个小时
- D. 两点下午

0510.3 Build: "I go to bed at nine in the evening."

Arrange all chunks: 九点 / 晚上 / 我 / 睡觉。

0510.4 三点 and 三个小时 mean the same.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0510.5 Your new school timetable starts much earlier than you are used to. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

6.6 ■ Answers and explanations

6.6.1 Approximating with sequential numbers

0507.1 十几

十几 = between eleven and nineteen.

0507.2 D. 五六天

Two neighbouring numbers, smaller first, then the measure word or noun.

0507.3 1–B: 二十多个 = twenty-odd; 2–D: 几十个 = dozens; 3–C: 三十岁左右 = around thirty years old; 4–A: 七八个 = seven or eight

多, 几, 左右 and neighbouring numbers all give approximate amounts.

0507.4 来了七八个人。

Neighbouring numbers + measure word + noun.

0507.5 One possible response: 来了七八个人。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The measure word comes after both numbers: 三四个人, not 三个四个人.
- With 多 and round tens, 多 goes before the measure word: 二十多个, not 二十个多 (for amounts under ten, 多 follows the measure word: 三个多小时).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

6.6.2 Big numbers: 万 / 亿

0508.1 五万

50,000 = 5 × 10,000 = 五万.

0508.2 C. 十万

100,000 = 10 × 10,000 = 十万.

0508.3 1–C: 一万 = 10,000; 2–B: 一百万 = 1,000,000; 3–D: 一亿 = 100,000,000; 4–A: 十亿 = 1,000,000,000

Chinese groups large numbers in fours.

0508.4 True.

1,000 × 10,000 = 10,000,000.

0508.5 One possible response: 重庆有三千多万人。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 100,000 is 十万, not 一百千: Chinese has no "hundred thousand" unit, so regroup by fours.
- A million is 一百万, not 一万万; 一万万 is an old word for 一亿.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

6.6.3 Times to the minute (点 … 分)

0509.1 半

半 after 点 = half past.

0509.2 B. 8:50

差十分九点 = ten minutes to nine.

0509.3 我早上六点一刻起床。

Subject + part of the day + time + verb.

0509.4 False.

For 1–9 minutes add 零: 八点零五分.

0509.5 One possible response: 火车八点二十五分开。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put the clock time before the verb: 我七点起床, not 我起床七点.
- Say 两点 for 2:00, not 二点.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

6.6.4 Telling the hour (Number + 点)

0510.1 几

几点 asks the hour.

0510.2 A. 下午两点

Part of the day first, and 2:00 is 两点.

0510.3 我晚上九点睡觉。

Subject + part of the day + time + verb.

0510.4 False.

三点 is 3 o'clock; 三个小时 is three hours.

0510.5 One possible response: 我们早上七点上课。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The time goes before the verb: 我六点下班, not 我下班六点.
- Use 两点 for 2 o'clock, not 二点.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

7 Particles

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

7.1 ■ Verb + 着 (ongoing state)

7.1.1 The door is open

- You come home and notice the door open and the lights on.
- **门开着，灯也亮着。** – "The door is open, and the lights are on too." 着 describes a state that continues.

7.1.2 Verb + 着 = an ongoing state

- **Verb + 着** describes a state that lasts: 开着 (is open), 穿着 (is wearing), 坐着 (is sitting).
- Negate with 没: 门没开着 – "The door isn't open."

她穿着一件红衣服。
tā chuān zhe yí jiàn hóng yī fu
Word guide: 她 – she; 穿 – wear; 着 – (ongoing); 一 – a; 件 – (measure word); 红 – red; 衣服 – top.



7.1.3 Doing one thing while in a state

- **Verb1 + 着 + Verb2**: the first state goes on while the second action happens: **他笑着说："没关系。"** – "He said with a smile, 'It doesn't matter.'"
- **我们坐着聊天。** – "We sat and chatted."

他笑着说：没关系。
tā xiào zhe shuō méi guān xi
Word guide: 他 – he; 笑 – smile; 着 – (while); 说 – say; 没关系 – it doesn't matter.

7.1.4 State, not progress

- 着 describes a state; for an action in progress, use 在: 他在开门 (he is opening the door) vs 门开着 (the door is open).
- Negate with 没, not 不: 灯没亮着.

7.1.5 着 versus 在

- **在 + Verb** = in the middle of doing: 他在穿衣服 – "He's getting dressed."
- **Verb + 着** = the resulting state: 他穿着一件白衬衫 – "He's wearing a white shirt."

他在穿衣服。
tā zài chuān yī fu
Word guide: 他 – he; 在 – (in progress); 穿 – put on; 衣服 – clothes.

7.1.6 Recap

- **Verb + 着** = an ongoing state (门开着); **V1 着 + V2** = do V2 while in state V1.
- 在 + Verb = action in progress. Negate 着 with 没.

Practise this pattern step by step.

7.2 ■ Sentence-final 了 (change of state)

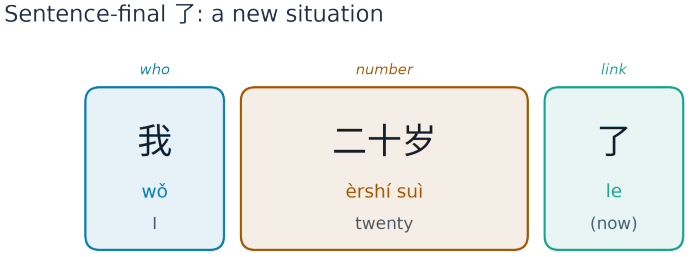
7.2.1 It's started raining

- You were about to go out, but you look out of the window and see rain.
- **下雨了！** – "It's raining (now)!" The final 了 says the situation has changed.

7.2.2 Sentence + 了 = something has changed

- **了 at the end of a sentence** announces a new situation: 天冷了 (it has turned cold), 我饿了 (I'm hungry now).
- It is not a past tense; it marks a change from before.

天冷了。
tiān lěng le
Word guide: 天 – the weather; 冷 – cold.



7.2.3 New facts, new plans, new ages

- **我二十岁了。** – "I'm twenty now." **他不来了。** – "He's not coming any more."
- With 快 or 要: **快到了。** – "We're almost there."

他不来了。
tā bù lái le
Word guide: 他 – he; 不 – not; 来 – come.

7.2.4 Not just "past"

- A past habit with no change takes no 了: 我以前常常去, not 我以前常常去了.
- 不 … 了 = no longer: 我不喝咖啡了 means "I've stopped drinking coffee", not "I didn't drink coffee".

7.2.5 Final 了 versus verb 了

- Verb + 了 marks a completed action: 我吃了一个苹果 – "I ate an apple."
- Final 了 marks a change: 我不饿了 – "I'm not hungry any more." Some sentences have both.

我吃了一个苹果。
wǒ chī le yí gè píng guǒ
Word guide: 我 – I; 吃 – eat; 一个 – an; 苹果 – apple.

7.2.6 Recap

- **Sentence-final 了** = a new situation, a change: 下雨了, 我饿了, 他不来了.
- 不 … 了 = no longer; 快 … 了 = soon. It is not a simple past tense.

Practise this pattern step by step.

7.3 ■ Questions with 呢 (and you? / where?)

7.3.1 Meeting a new classmate

- A new classmate tells you she comes from Chengdu, then waits for you to say where you are from.
- **我是成都人，你呢?** – "I'm from Chengdu. And you?"

7.3.2 Noun + 呢? = "What about …?"

- **X + 呢?** asks the same question again about X: 我很好，你呢? – "I'm fine, and you?"
- The question is understood from what was just said, so it can be very short.

我很好，你呢?
wǒ hěn hǎo nǐ ne
Word guide: 我 – I; 很 – very; 好 – well; 你 – you; 呢 – (and …?).



7.3.3 Where is it? 呢 on its own

- With no context, **Noun + 呢?** asks where something is: **我的钥匙呢?** – "Where are my keys?"
- 呢 also softens a question-word question: 你在干什么呢? – "What are you up to?"

我的钥匙呢?
wǒ de yào shi ne
Word guide: 我 – my; 钥匙 – keys; 呢 – (where?).

7.3.4 呢 and 吗 are different

- Do not put 呢 on a yes-no question: 你是老师吗? , not 你是老师呢?
- To ask "where?", use 你去哪儿? or 你去哪儿呢? . With 吗 the question word changes meaning: 你去哪儿吗? asks "Are you going anywhere?"

7.3.5 呢 for an ongoing action

- At the end of a statement, 呢 can mark something still going on: **他在睡觉呢。** – "He's sleeping (right now)."
- It often goes with 在 or 着: 外面下着雨呢 – "It's raining out."

他在睡觉呢。
tā zài shuì jiào ne
Word guide: 他 – he; 在 – (in progress); 睡觉 – sleep.

7.3.6 Recap

- **X + 呢?** = and X? / what about X?; with no context, where is X?
- Not on yes-no questions (use 吗). After 在 + verb, 呢 marks an ongoing action.

Practise this pattern step by step.

7.4 ■ 的 / 得 / 地 (the three “de”)

7.4.1 Three characters, one sound

- A friend texts you about a classmate who runs fast, but writes the wrong “de” and the sentence looks odd.
- **他跑得很快。** – “He runs fast.” 的, 得 and 地 are all read de, but each has its own job.

7.4.2 的 before a noun

- **的** links a description or owner to a noun: 我的书, 漂亮的衣服, 昨天买的东西.
- Test: is the next word a noun (or is the noun left out)? Then it is 的.

这是我昨天买的书。
zhè shì wǒ zuó tiān mǎi de shū
Word guide: 这 – this; 是 – is; 我 – my; 昨天 – yesterday; 买 – bought; 的 – (that); 书 – book.



7.4.3 地 before a verb, 得 after a verb

- **地** links a manner to the verb that follows: 认真地学习, 慢慢地走.
- **得** follows a verb and introduces how well or how much: 跑得很快, 说得很好, 累得不想动.

她说得很流利。
tā shuō de hěn liú lì
Word guide: 她 – she; 说 – speaks; 很 – very; 流利 – fluently.

7.4.4 The quick test

- Look at what follows: a noun → 的; a verb → 地; and after a verb, a description of the result → 得.
- Typing tip: in 跑得很快 the verb 跑 is before the particle, so it must be 得, not 的.

7.4.5 One sentence, two particles

- **他高兴地说，他考得很好。** – "He said happily that he had done well in the exam."
- **我喜欢吃妈妈做的菜。** – "I love the food my mum makes." Here the 的 phrase describes 菜.

他高兴地说，他考得很好。
tā gāo xìng de shuō tā kǎo de hěn hǎo
Word guide: 他 – he; 高兴 – happily; 说 – said; 他 – he; 考 – test; 很 – very; 好 – well.

7.4.6 Recap

- **的 + noun** (我的书), **地 + verb** (认真地学), **verb + 得 + result** (跑得很快).
- All are read de; choose by what comes before and after.

Practise this pattern step by step.

7.5 ■ Practice without the models

7.5.1 Verb + 着 (ongoing state)

0511.1 Complete: "The window is open." 窗户开 ……。

0511.2 Which says "He is opening the door" (the action in progress)?

- A. 他在开门。
- B. 他开着门了。
- C. 门在开着。
- D. 门开着。

0511.3 Build: "He said with a smile..."

Arrange all chunks: 笑着 / 说。/ 他

0511.4 The negative of 门开着 is 门不开着.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0511.5 You come home and notice the door open and the lights on. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

7.5.2 Sentence-final 了 (change of state)

0512.1 The light turns green: "It's green now, let's go." 绿灯 ……，走吧。

0512.2 What does 我不抽烟了 mean?

- A. I've quit smoking.
- B. I don't want to smoke.
- C. I'm smoking now.
- D. I didn't smoke.

0512.3 Build: “We’re almost there.”

Arrange all chunks: 到 / 快 / 我们 / 了。

0512.4 我以前常常去了 is correct for a past habit.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0512.5 You were about to go out, but you look out of the window and see rain. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

7.5.3 Questions with 呢 (and you? / where?)

0513.1 Complete: “I like tea. What about you?” 我喜欢喝茶，你 ……?

0513.2 Which question is correct?

- A. 你吗是学生?
- B. 你是学生呢?
- C. 你是学生吗呢?
- D. 你是学生吗?

0513.3 Said while searching your bag, 我的手机呢? means “Where’s my phone?”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0513.4 Build: “He’s sleeping right now.”

Arrange all chunks: 呢。 / 在 / 他 / 睡觉

0513.5 A new classmate tells you she comes from Chengdu, then waits for you to say where you are from. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

7.5.4 的 / 得 / 地 (the three “de”)

0514.1 Complete: “She sings very well.” 她唱 …… 很好。

0514.2 Fill the gaps: 我 ___ 朋友慢慢 ___ 走过来。

- A. 地 … 得
- B. 得 … 的
- C. 的 … 地
- D. 的 … 得

0514.3 Match each phrase to its particle.

- 1. 漂亮 ___ 衣服
- 1. 认真 ___ 工作
- 1. 写 ___ 很好

- A. 得
- B. 地
- C. 的

0514.4 In 妈妈做的菜, 的 is correct because 菜 is a noun.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0514.5 A friend texts you about a classmate who runs fast, but writes the wrong “de” and the sentence looks odd. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

7.6 ■ Answers and explanations

7.6.1 Verb + 着 (ongoing state)

0511.1 着

Verb + 着 describes the continuing state.

0511.2 A. 他在开门。

An action in progress takes 在 + Verb; 门开着 is the state.

0511.3 他笑着说。

V1 + 着 + V2.

0511.4 False.

着 is negated with 没: 门没开着.

0511.5 One possible response: 门开着，灯也亮着。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 着 describes a state; for an action in progress, use 在: 他在开门 (he is opening the door) vs 门开着 (the door is open).
- Negate with 没, not 不: 灯没亮着.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

7.6.2 Sentence-final 了 (change of state)

0512.1 了

Final 了 announces the change.

0512.2 A. I've quit smoking.

不 … 了 = no longer.

0512.3 我们快到了。

快 + verb + 了 = about to.

0512.4 False.

A past habit with no change takes no 了.

0512.5 One possible response: 下雨了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- A past habit with no change takes no 了: 我以前常常去, not 我以前常常去了.

- 不 … 了 = no longer: 我不喝咖啡了 means “I’ve stopped drinking coffee”, not “I didn’t drink coffee”.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

7.6.3 Questions with 呢 (and you? / where?)

0513.1 呢

X + 呢 repeats the question about X.

0513.2 D. 你是学生吗?

Yes-no questions take 吗; 呢 does not make a yes-no question.

0513.3 True.

With no earlier question, Noun + 呢 asks where something is.

0513.4 他在睡觉呢。

在 + verb + 呢 marks an action in progress.

0513.5 One possible response: 我是成都人，你呢?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not put 呢 on a yes-no question: 你是老师吗? , not 你是老师呢?
- To ask “where?”, use 你去哪儿? or 你去哪儿呢? . With 吗 the question word changes meaning: 你去哪儿吗? asks “Are you going anywhere?”
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

7.6.4 的 / 得 / 地 (the three “de”)

0514.1 得

After a verb, 得 introduces how well.

0514.2 C. 的 … 地

我的朋友 (before a noun) and 慢慢地走 (before a verb).

0514.3 1–C: 漂亮 ___ 衣服 = 的; 2–B: 认真 ___ 工作 = 地; 3–A: 写 ___ 很好 = 得

Noun → 的; following verb → 地; after a verb → 得.

0514.4 True.

The 的 phrase describes the noun 菜.

0514.5 One possible response: 他跑得很快。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Look at what follows: a noun → 的; a verb → 地; and after a verb, a description of the result → 得.
- Typing tip: in 跑得很快 the verb 跑 is before the particle, so it must be 得, not 的.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

8 Prepositions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

8.1 ■ 关于 + Topic (about / regarding)

8.1.1 A book about China

- In the library you find a book that explains Chinese history for beginners.
- **这是一本关于中国历史的书。** – "This is a book about Chinese history."

8.1.2 关于 + topic

- **关于 + topic** = "about, regarding". Before a noun it takes 的: 关于中国的书.
- At the start of a sentence it introduces the topic: 关于这个问题，我们明天再讨论.

关于这个问题，我们明天再讨论。
guān yú zhè ge wèn tí wǒ men míng tiān zài tǎo lùn
Word guide: 关于 – about; 这个 – this; 问题 – question; 我们 – we; 明天 – tomorrow; 再 – then; 讨论 – discuss.



8.1.3 Topics of talks, books and news

- **我看了一个关于熊猫的节目。** – "I watched a programme about pandas."
- **关于考试的时间，老师还没说。** – "The teacher hasn't said anything yet about the exam time."

我看了一个关于熊猫的节目。
wǒ kàn le yí gè guān yú xióng māo de jié mù
Word guide: 我 – I; 看 – watched; 一个 – a; 关于 – about; 熊猫 – pandas; 节目 – programme.

8.1.4 Placement

- A 关于 phrase describing a noun needs 的: 关于中国的书, not 关于中国书.
- As a topic, 关于 … comes first, before the subject: 关于这件事，我不知道, not 我关于这件事不知道.

8.1.5 关于 versus 对

- 关于 introduces a topic: 关于环境的文章 – “an article about the environment”.
- 对 shows the target of an attitude: 他对中国文化很感兴趣 – “He’s very interested in Chinese culture.”

他对中国文化很感兴趣。
tā duì Zhōng guó wén huà hěn gǎn xìng qù
Word guide: 他 – he; 对 – in; 中国 – Chinese; 文化 – culture; 很 – very; 感兴趣 – interested.

8.1.6 Recap

- **关于 + topic (+ 的 + noun)** = about …; as a topic marker it starts the sentence.
- 对 marks the target of feelings (对 … 感兴趣), not the topic of a book or talk.

Practise this pattern step by step.

8.2 ■ 直到 … ，… 才 … (all the way until)

8.2.1 Waiting until midnight

- You stayed up for your sister’s flight to land; she only messaged you at midnight.
- **我一直等到十二点，她才给我发消息。** – “I waited right up until twelve before she messaged me.”

8.2.2 直到 + time / event，… 才 …

- **直到 + time/event** = “right up until”; the result follows with **才**: something happened only then.
- 直到 often comes first: 直到昨天，我才知道这件事.

直到昨天，我才知道这件事。
zhí dào zuó tiān wǒ cái zhī dào zhè jiàn shì
Word guide: 直到 – not until; 昨天 – yesterday; 我 – I; 才 – only then; 知道 – knew; 这件事 – this.



8.2.3 Late discoveries and long waits

- **直到毕业，他才明白老师的话。** – “It wasn’t until he graduated that he understood what the teacher meant.”
- With 一直 … 到: **雨一直下到晚上。** – “The rain kept falling until the evening.”

雨一直下到晚上。
yǔ yì zhí xià dào wǎn shang
Word guide: 雨 – the rain; 一直 – continuously; 下 – fall; 到 – until; 晚上 – the evening.

8.2.4 Use 才 for the delayed result

- The result clause takes 才 (it was late): 直到十点他才来, not 直到十点他就来了.
- This short result model uses 才知道. Do not infer from it that 了 is impossible in all other 才 constructions.

8.2.5 直到 versus 到

- 到 alone after a verb gives the end point: 我们玩到十点 – "We played until ten."
- 直到 stresses how long it took before something finally happened.

我们玩到十点。
wǒ men wán dào shí diǎn
Word guide: 我们 – we; 玩 – play; 到 – until; 十点 – ten o'clock.

8.2.6 Recap

- **直到 + time/event，Subject + 才 + Verb** = not until then did …
- 才 highlights the delayed result in this model. Verb + 到 + time gives an endpoint; 了 is not universally banned with 才.

Practise this pattern step by step.

8.3 ■ 向 + Direction / Person + Verb (towards)

8.3.1 Which way?

- You are lost in an old town, and a shopkeeper points down the street.
- **你向前走，然后向右拐。** – "Walk forward, then turn right."

8.3.2 向 + direction / person + Verb

- **向 + direction** = towards: 向前走, 向左拐, 向东开.
- **向 + person** = to, towards someone: 向老师问好 – "say hello to the teacher".

向左拐。
xiàng zuǒ guǎi
Word guide: 向 – towards; 左 – the left; 拐 – turn.

向 + direction + verb



8.3.3 Actions aimed at people

- **我向他借了一本书。** – "I borrowed a book from him."
- **我们应该向她学习。** – "We should learn from her."

我们应该向她学习。
wǒ men yīng gāi xiàng tā xué xí
Word guide: 我们 – we; 应该 – should; 向 – from; 她 – her; 学习 – learn.

8.3.4 向 goes before the verb

- Put 向 + direction before the verb: 向右拐, not 拐向右 in everyday directions.
- "Borrow from someone" is 向 + person + 借, not 借向 + person.

8.3.5 向 versus 往

- 往 also means "towards" for movement: 往前走, 往左拐. In directions the two are interchangeable.
- Only 向 works with people: 向他道歉 – "apologise to him", not 往他道歉.

我向他道歉。
wǒ xiàng tā dào qiàn
Word guide: 我 – I; 向 – to; 他 – him; 道歉 – apologise.

8.3.6 Recap

- **向 + direction + Verb** = towards (向前走); **向 + person + Verb** = to/from someone (向他借, 向她学习).
- 往 = towards in directions only; people take 向.

Practise this pattern step by step.

8.4 ■ Practice without the models

8.4.1 关于 + Topic (about / regarding)

0705.1 Complete: "I want to buy a book about cooking." 我想买一本 …… 做饭的书。

0705.2 "She is very interested in music." Which word fits? 她 _____ 音乐很感兴趣。

- A. 向
- B. 对
- C. 跟
- D. 关于

0705.3 Build: “I watched a programme about pandas.”

Arrange all chunks: 关于熊猫的 / 一个 / 节目。/ 我看了

0705.4 关于中国书 is a correct phrase for “a book about China”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0705.5 In the library you find a book that explains Chinese history for beginners. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

8.4.2 直到 … ，… 才 … (all the way until)

0706.1 Complete: “It wasn’t until yesterday that I knew.” 直到昨天，我 …… 知道。

0706.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 直到十一点，他才睡觉。
- B. 他才直到十一点睡觉。
- C. 直到十一点，他就睡觉了。
- D. 直到十一点，他才睡觉了。

0706.3 Build: “The rain kept falling until the evening.”

Arrange all chunks: 一直 / 晚上。/ 下到 / 雨

0706.4 我们玩到十点 means “We played until ten.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0706.5 You stayed up for your sister’s flight to land; she only messaged you at midnight. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

8.4.3 向 + Direction / Person + Verb (towards)

0707.1 Complete: “Turn left at the crossroads.” 到了路口 …… 左拐。

0707.2 Which says “I want to apologise to her.”?

- A. 我想她向道歉。
- B. 我想道歉向她。
- C. 我想向她道歉。

- D. 我想往她道歉。

0707.3 Build: “I borrowed a book from him.”

Arrange all chunks: 借了 / 我 / 一本书。/ 向他

0707.4 往前走 and 向前走 both mean “walk forward”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0707.5 You are lost in an old town, and a shopkeeper points down the street. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

8.5 ■ Answers and explanations

8.5.1 关于 + Topic (about / regarding)

0705.1 关于

关于 + topic + 的 + noun.

0705.2 B. 对

对 … 感兴趣 marks the target of interest.

0705.3 我看了一个关于熊猫的节目。

关于 + topic + 的 + noun.

0705.4 False.

The 关于 phrase needs 的 before the noun: 关于中国的书.

0705.5 One possible response: 这是一本关于中国历史的书。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- A 关于 phrase describing a noun needs 的: 关于中国的书, not 关于中国书.
- As a topic, 关于 … comes first, before the subject: 关于这件事，我不知道, not 我关于这件事不知道.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

8.5.2 直到 … ，… 才 … (all the way until)

0706.1 才

直到 … 才 ….

0706.2 A. 直到十一点，他才睡觉。

直到十一点，他才睡觉 is right: 直到 … 才 means “not until”, and this simple 才 pattern takes no final 了. 就 would mean “as early as”, which contradicts 直到.

0706.3 雨一直下到晚上。

一直 + Verb + 到 + time.

0706.4 True.

Verb + 到 + time gives the end point.

0706.5 One possible response: 我一直等到十二点，她才给我发消息。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The result clause takes 才 (it was late): 直到十点他才来, not 直到十点他就来了.

- This short result model uses 才知道. Do not infer from it that 了 is impossible in all other 才 constructions.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

8.5.3 向 + Direction / Person + Verb (towards)

0707.1 向

向/往 + direction + verb.

0707.2 C. 我想向她道歉。

With people, only 向 works, before the verb.

0707.3 我向他借了一本书。

向 + person + 借.

0707.4 True.

In directions 往 and 向 are interchangeable.

0707.5 One possible response: 你向前走，然后向右拐。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 向 + direction before the verb: 向右拐, not 拐向右 in everyday directions.
- "Borrow from someone" is 向 + person + 借, not 借向 + person.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

9 Verbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

9.1 ■ 看起来 (looks / seems)

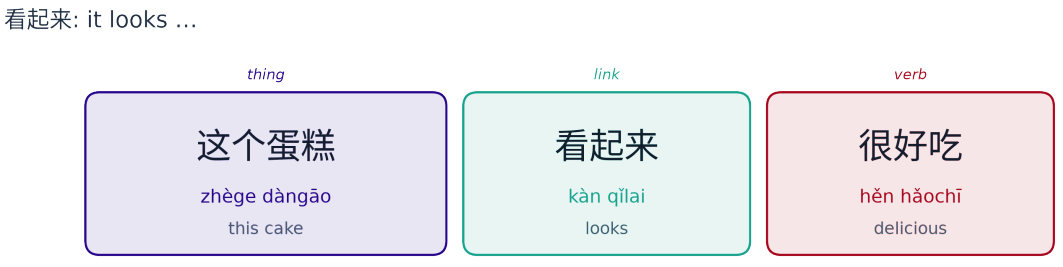
9.1.1 Judging by appearance

- A cake in the bakery window has thick cream and fresh strawberries. You haven't tasted it yet.
- **这个蛋糕看起来很好吃。** – "This cake looks delicious."

9.1.2 Subject + 看起来 + Adjective

- **看起来** = "looks, seems (from what I can see)". It goes before the description, and 很 often follows it.
- It reports an impression, not a fact you have checked.

他看起来很累。
tā kàn qǐ lái hěn lèi
Word guide: 他 – he; 看起来 – looks; 很 – very; 累 – tired.



9.1.3 Other senses: 听起来, 吃起来, 用起来

- Sound: **这个主意听起来不错。** – "That idea sounds good."
- Taste and use: 这个菜吃起来有点辣 – "This dish tastes a bit spicy." 这个手机用起来很方便 – "This phone is easy to use."

这个主意听起来不错。
zhè ge zhǔ yi tīng qǐ lái bú cuò
Word guide: 这个 – this; 主意 – idea; 听起来 – sounds; 不错 – good.

9.1.4 An impression from the senses

- 看起来 gives what you see, so it does not prove the cake tastes good; tasting is 吃起来.

- For a guess that is not based on looks (he seems to have left), use 好像: 他好像走了.

9.1.5 看起来 versus 看上去 and 好像

- 看上去 means almost the same as 看起来 and is common for people's appearance: 她看上去很年轻.
- 好像 is a guess or a comparison: **他好像生病了。** – "He seems to be ill (I suspect)."

他好像生病了。
tā hǎo xiàng shēng bìng le
Word guide: 他 – he; 好像 – seems; 生病 – be ill.

9.1.6 Recap

- **看起来 + Adj** = looks …; 听起来 = sounds …; 吃起来 = tastes …; 用起来 = is … to use.
- These give a first impression from one sense. A general guess uses 好像.

Practise this pattern step by step.

9.2 ■ 没 (有) comparisons (not as … as)

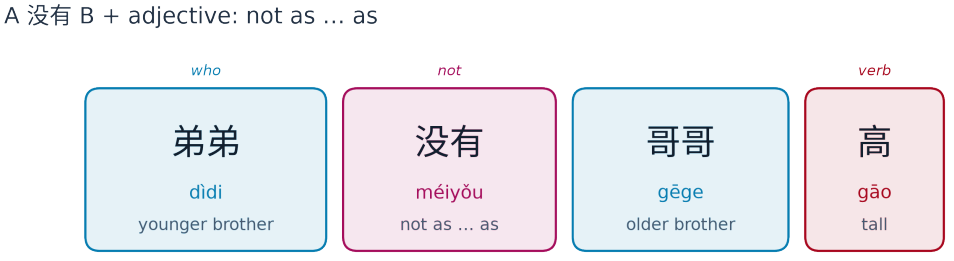
9.2.1 Not as tall as his brother

- Two brothers stand back to back. The younger one is shorter, and he does not like it.
- **弟弟没有哥哥高。** – "The younger brother isn't as tall as the older one."

9.2.2 A + 没 (有) + B + Adjective

- **A 没有 B + Adj** = "A is not as Adj as B". It is the usual negative of a 比 comparison.
- The adjective stays bare: 没有他高, 没有昨天冷.

今天没有昨天冷。
jīn tiān méi yǒu zuó tiān lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 没有 – not as; 昨天 – yesterday; 冷 – cold.



9.2.3 Add 那么 or 这么 for force

- **我的中文没有你那么好。** – "My Chinese isn't as good as yours."
- 这么 for something here: 那个城市没有北京这么大。– "That city isn't as big as Beijing (here)."

我的中文没有你那么好。
wǒ de Zhōng wén méi yǒu nǐ nà me hǎo
Word guide: 我 – my; 中文 – Chinese; 没有 – not as; 你 – you; 那么 – so; 好 – good.

9.2.4 No 很, and 没有 not 不

- No 很 or 非常 before the adjective: 没有他高, not 没有他很高.
- 不比 is a different idea ("not more … than", often in an argument); the plain negative of 比 is 没有.

9.2.5 比 versus 没有

- Positive: **哥哥比弟弟高。** – "The older brother is taller than the younger."
- Negative: **弟弟没有哥哥高。** Flip the order, use 没有, keep the same adjective.

哥哥比弟弟高。
gē ge bǐ dì di gāo
Word guide: 哥哥 – older brother; 比 – than; 弟弟 – younger brother; 高 – tall.

9.2.6 Recap

- **A 没有 B (那么) + Adj** = A is not as Adj as B.
- It is the negative of A 比 B + Adj. Bare adjective, no 很.

Practise this pattern step by step.

9.3 ■ 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (make / let / ask someone do)

9.3.1 Who decides?

- You want to go out tonight, but your parents have other ideas.
- **妈妈不让我晚上出去。** – "Mum won't let me go out in the evening."

9.3.2 A + 让 / 叫 / 请 + B + Verb

- **A 让 B + Verb**: A lets or makes B do something. **A 叫 B + Verb**: A tells B to do it (spoken). **A 请 B + Verb**: A politely invites or asks B.
- The person B is both the object of 让 and the doer of the next verb.

老师让我们写作业。
lǎo shī ràng wǒ men xiě zuò yè
Word guide: 老师 – the teacher; 让 – made; 我们 – us; 写 – write; 作业 – homework.

让 / 叫 + person + verb: who decides



9.3.3 Telling, inviting, causing

- Telling: **妈妈叫我去买菜。** – "Mum told me to go and buy vegetables."
- Inviting: **我想请你吃饭。** – "I'd like to treat you to a meal." Causing a feeling: **这个消息让我很高兴。** – "This news made me very happy."

这个消息让我很高兴。
zhè ge xiāo xi ràng wǒ hěn gāo xìng
Word guide: 这个 – this; 消息 – news; 让 – made; 我 – me; 很 – very; 高兴 – happy.

9.3.4 Order and negation

- Keep the order A + 让 + B + Verb: 妈妈让我去, not 妈妈让去我.
- Negate the first verb to refuse permission: 不让我去 = "won't let me go"; 让我不去 changes the meaning to "tell me not to go".

9.3.5 使 for formal causes

- **使** = "to cause, make", mainly in writing, with an abstract cause and a change of state: 运动使人健康。 – "Exercise makes people healthy."
- In speech, 让 covers most of this: 运动让人很健康.

运动使人健康。
yùn dòng shǐ rén jiàn kāng
Word guide: 运动 – exercise; 使 – makes; 人 – people; 健康 – healthy.

9.3.6 Recap

- **A 让/叫/请 B + Verb**: 让 = let/make, 叫 = tell (spoken), 请 = invite/ask politely.
- 让 + person + feeling = make someone feel; 使 is the formal written "cause". Refuse with 不让.

Practise this pattern step by step.

9.4 ■ 经过 (after going through)

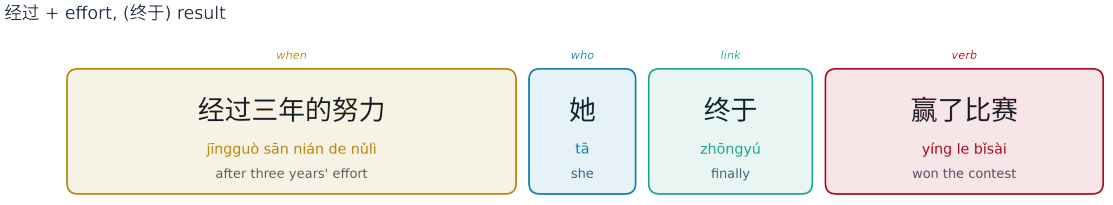
9.4.1 After three years of training

- A runner who trained every morning for three years has just won her first marathon.
- **经过三年的努力，她终于赢了比赛。** – "After three years of hard work, she finally won the race."

9.4.2 经过 + process, result

- **经过 + a process (effort, discussion, time)**, then the result in the second clause.
- The process is usually a noun phrase: 经过一年的学习, 经过大家的讨论, 经过医生的检查.

经过大家的讨论，我们决定去上海。
jīng guò dà jiā de tǎo lùn wǒ men jué dìng qù Shàng hǎi
Word guide: 经过 – after; 大家 – everyone's; 讨论 – discussion; 我们 – we; 决定 – decided; 去 – go to; 上海 – Shanghai.



9.4.3 经过 as "pass by, go through"

- It is also a plain verb of movement: **我每天上班都经过这个公园。** – "I pass this park every day on the way to work."
- **这趟车经过北京吗?** – "Does this train go through Beijing?"

我每天经过这个公园。
wǒ měi tiān jīng guò zhè ge gōng yuán
Word guide: 我 – I; 每天 – every day; 经过 – pass; 这个 – this; 公园 – park.

9.4.4 A process before a result

- 经过 needs a process that leads somewhere; for a simple "after (a time)", use 以后: 下课以后, not 经过下课.
- Put 经过 + process first and the result second: 经过检查，医生说没问题.

9.4.5 经过 versus 通过

- 经过 stresses going through the process: 经过多次试验 – "after many experiments".
- 通过 stresses the means used to reach the goal: 通过朋友，我找到了工作 – "Through a friend, I found a job."

通过朋友，我找到了工作。
tōng guò péng you wǒ zhǎo dào le gōng zuò
Word guide: 通过 – through; 朋友 – a friend; 我 – I; 找到 – found; 工作 – a job.

9.4.6 Recap

- **经过 + process, result** = after going through …, …
- As a verb, 经过 = pass by / go through a place. For a plain "after", use 以后; for "by means of", 通过.

Practise this pattern step by step.

9.5 ■ Practice without the models

9.5.1 看起来 (looks / seems)

0301.1 Complete: "You look very happy today." 你今天 …… 很高兴。

0301.2 Your friend describes a plan on the phone. You say: "That sounds interesting." Which fits?

- A. 听起来很有意思。
- B. 用起来很有意思。
- C. 看起来很有意思。
- D. 吃起来很有意思。

0301.3 Match each sense verb to its meaning.

- 1. 看起来
- 1. 听起来
- 1. 吃起来
- 1. 用起来
- A. tastes
- B. sounds
- C. is … to use
- D. looks

0301.4 Build: "This cake looks delicious."

Arrange all chunks: 很 / 好吃。/ 这个蛋糕 / 看起来

0301.5 A cake in the bakery window has thick cream and fresh strawberries. You haven't tasted it yet. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

9.5.2 没 (有) comparisons (not as ... as)

0401.1 Complete: “The subway isn’t as fast as the high-speed train.” 地铁 …… 高铁快。

0401.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我没有忙他。
- B. 我没有他很忙。
- C. 我没有他那么忙。
- D. 我不有他忙。

0401.3 Build: “My Chinese isn’t as good as yours.”

Arrange all chunks: 你 / 那么好。/ 我的中文 / 没有

0401.4 哥哥比弟弟高 and 弟弟没有哥哥高 describe the same situation.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0401.5 Two brothers stand back to back. The younger one is shorter, and he does not like it. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

9.5.3 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (make / let / ask someone do)

0302.1 Complete: “My dad doesn’t let me play games.” 爸爸不 …… 我玩游戏。

0302.2 You invite your teacher to dinner. Which verb is most polite? 我想 ___ 老师吃饭。

- A. 叫
- B. 使
- C. 让
- D. 请

0302.3 Build: “This news made me very happy.”

Arrange all chunks: 让 / 我 / 很高兴。/ 这个消息

0302.4 妈妈不让我去 and 妈妈让我不去 mean exactly the same.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0302.5 You want to go out tonight, but your parents have other ideas. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

9.5.4 经过 (after going through)

0303.1 Complete: “After a check-up, the doctor said it was nothing serious.” ……检查，医生说没什么大问题。

0303.2 Which word fits? “After class, let’s play basketball.” 下课 _____，我们去打篮球吧。

- A. 终于
- B. 经过
- C. 通过
- D. 以后

0303.3 Build: “I pass this park every day.”

Arrange all chunks: 每天 / 经过 / 这个公园。/ 我

0303.4 通过朋友，我找到了工作 stresses the means (a friend) rather than a long process.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0303.5 A runner who trained every morning for three years has just won her first marathon. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

9.6 ■ Answers and explanations

9.6.1 看起来 (looks / seems)

0301.1 看起来

看起来 + Adj reports how someone looks.

0301.2 A. 听起来很有意思。

You heard the plan, so 听起来.

0301.3 1–D: 看起来 = looks; 2–B: 听起来 = sounds; 3–A: 吃起来 = tastes; 4–C: 用起来 = is … to use

Sense verb + 起来 = comes across as … to that sense.

0301.4 这个蛋糕看起来很好吃。

Subject + 看起来 + 很 + Adj.

0301.5 One possible response: 这个蛋糕看起来很好吃。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 看起来 gives what you see, so it does not prove the cake tastes good; tasting is 吃起来.
- For a guess that is not based on looks (he seems to have left), use 好像: 他好像走了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

9.6.2 没 (有) comparisons (not as … as)

0401.1 没有

A 没有 B + Adj = A is not as Adj as B.

0401.2 C. 我没有他那么忙。

我没有他那么忙 is right: A 没有 B (那么) + bare adjective. 很 cannot go before the adjective in a comparison, 不有 is never used, and the adjective must follow B.

0401.3 我的中文没有你那么好。

A + 没有 + B + 那么 + Adj.

0401.4 True.

Both say the older brother is taller.

0401.5 One possible response: 弟弟没有哥哥高。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.

- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很 or 非常 before the adjective: 没有他高, not 没有他很高.
- 不比 is a different idea ("not more … than", often in an argument); the plain negative of 比 is 没有.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

9.6.3 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (make / let / ask someone do)

0302.1 让

不让 + person + verb = not allow someone to do something.

0302.2 D. 请

请 is the polite "invite / treat".

0302.3 这个消息让我很高兴。

Cause + 让 + person + feeling.

0302.4 False.

不让我去 refuses permission; 让我不去 tells me not to go. The focus differs.

0302.5 One possible response: 妈妈不让我晚上出去。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Keep the order A + 让 + B + Verb: 妈妈让我去, not 妈妈让去我.
- Negate the first verb to refuse permission: 不让我去 = "won't let me go"; 让我不去 changes the meaning to "tell me not to go".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

9.6.4 经过 (after going through)

0303.1 经过

经过 + process (the check-up), then the result.

0303.2 D. 以后

A simple point in time takes 以后; 经过 needs a process.

0303.3 我每天经过这个公园。

As a verb, 经过 takes the place as its object.

0303.4 True.

通过 = by means of; 经过 = after going through a process.

0303.5 One possible response: 经过三年的努力，她终于赢了比赛。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 经过 needs a process that leads somewhere; for a simple "after (a time)", use 以后: 下课以后, not 经过下课.
- Put 经过 + process first and the result second: 经过检查，医生说没问题.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

10 Auxiliary verbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

10.1 ■ 应该 / 该 (should, ought to)

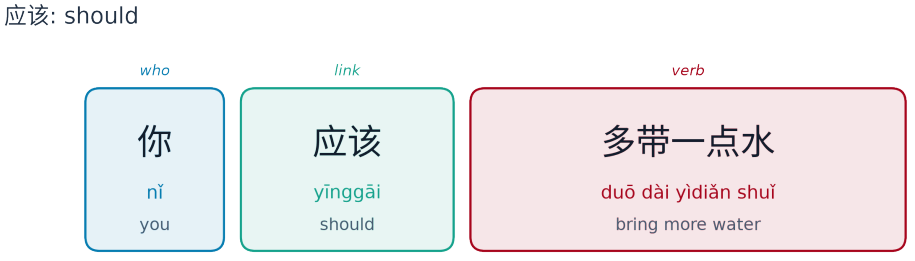
10.1.1 A hot day out

- Your friend is going hiking at noon in 35 degrees with one small bottle of water.
- **你应该多带一点水。** – "You should take some more water."

10.1.2 应该 / 该 + Verb

- **应该 + Verb** = "should, ought to": advice or duty. 该 is the shorter, spoken form.
- Negative: **不应该** = "shouldn't": 你不应该这么晚睡觉.

你不应该这么晚睡觉。
nǐ bù yīng gāi zhè me wǎn shuì jiào
Word guide: 你 – you; 不 – not; 应该 – should; 这么 – so; 晚 – late; 睡觉 – go to bed.



10.1.3 It is time to ...

- **该 + Verb + 了** = "it's time to ...": **十二点了，我该走了。** – "It's twelve; I should be going."
- **该 + person + Verb** = "it's someone's turn": 该你了 – "Your turn."

十二点了，我该走了。
shí èr diǎn le wǒ gāi zǒu le
Word guide: 十二点 – twelve o'clock; 我 – I; 该 – should; 走 – go.

10.1.4 Form and position

- 应该 goes after the subject and before the verb: 你应该休息, not 应该你休息.
- Put 不 before 应该 to say "shouldn't": 你不应该去, not 你应该不去.

10.1.5 应该 for “probably”

- 应该 can also be a confident guess: **他应该已经到家了。** – “He should be home by now.”
- Context tells you which one: advice to a person, or a guess about a situation.

他应该已经到家了。
tā yīng gāi yǐ jīng dào jiā le
Word guide: 他 – he; 应该 – should; 已经 – already; 到 – arrive; 家 – home.

10.1.6 Recap

- **应该 / 该 + Verb** = should; **不应该** = shouldn’t.
- **该 ... 了** = it’s time to …; 该你了 = your turn; 应该 can also mean “probably”.

Practise this pattern step by step.

10.2 ■ Practice without the models

10.2.1 应该 / 该 (should, ought to)

0304.1 Advise: “You should see a doctor.” 你 …… 去看医生。

0304.2 What does 该你了 mean?

- A. It’s your turn.
- B. You should be careful.
- C. You’ve arrived.
- D. You’re probably right.

0304.3 Build: “It’s twelve; I should be going.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 走了。/ 十二点了 / 我该

0304.4 In 他应该已经到家了, 应该 is advice to him.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0304.5 Your friend is going hiking at noon in 35 degrees with one small bottle of water. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

10.3 ■ Answers and explanations

10.3.1 应该 / 该 (should, ought to)

0304.1 应该

应该 + verb gives advice.

0304.2 A. It's your turn.

该 + person = it's that person's turn.

0304.3 十二点了，我该走了。

该 + verb + 了 = it's time to.

0304.4 False.

Here 应该 is a confident guess: "he should be home by now."

0304.5 One possible response: 你应该多带一点水。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 应该 goes after the subject and before the verb: 你应该休息, not 应该你休息.
- Put 不 before 应该 to say "shouldn't": 你不应该去, not 你应该不去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11 Verb phrases

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

11.1 ■ 难 + Verb (unpleasant to …)

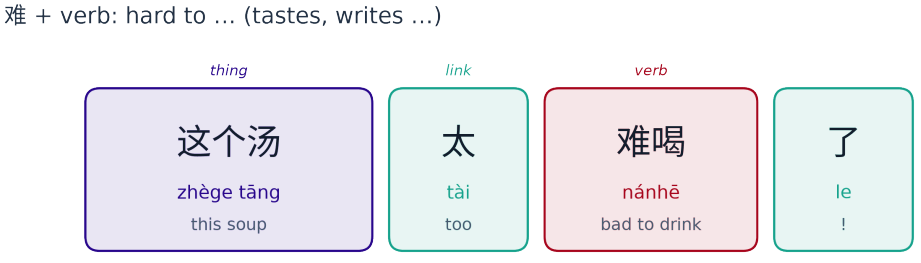
11.1.1 The canteen's new dish

- You try the canteen's new soup. It is salty and cold.
- **这个汤太难喝了！** – "This soup tastes awful!" 难 + a sense verb = unpleasant to …

11.1.2 难 + sense verb

- **难吃，难喝，难看，难听，难闻** = bad-tasting (food), bad-tasting (drinks), ugly, unpleasant to hear, bad-smelling.
- They work like adjectives: 很难看, 太难听了. The opposites start with 好: 好吃, 好喝, 好看, 好听, 好闻.

这首歌很难听。
zhè shǒu gē hěn nán tīng
Word guide: 这 – this; 首 – (measure word); 歌 – song; 很 – very; 难听 – unpleasant to hear.



11.1.3 难 + other verbs: hard to …

- With most other verbs, 难 means "difficult to": **这个字很难写。** – "This character is hard to write."
- **他的问题很难回答。** – "His question is hard to answer."

他的问题很难回答。
tā de wèn tí hěn nán huí dá
Word guide: 他 – his; 问题 – question; 很 – very; 难 – hard to; 回答 – answer.

11.1.4 Unpleasant versus difficult

- 难吃 means it tastes bad, not that it is hard to eat; 难看 means ugly, not hard to see.
- 难受 is a feeling: "feel unwell, upset": 我头疼，很难受.

11.1.5 难 + Verb versus 不好 + Verb

- 不好吃 is milder: "not tasty". 难吃 is stronger: "awful".
- 不好写 (not easy to write) is similar to 很难写, but softer.

这个菜不好吃。
zhè ge cài bù hǎo chī
Word guide: 这 – this; 个 – (measure word); 菜 – dish; 不 – not; 好吃 – tasty.

11.1.6 Recap

- **难 + sense verb** (难吃, 难看, 难听, 难闻, 难喝) = unpleasant to that sense; opposite 好 + verb.
- **难 + other verbs** = hard to do: 难写, 难回答. 难受 = feel bad.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.2 ■ Verb + 了 + Duration (did for a length of time)

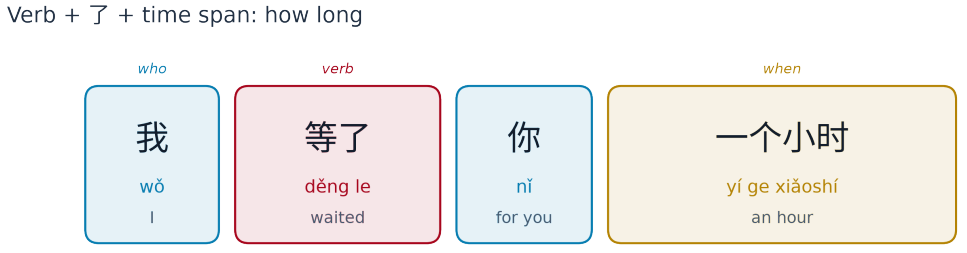
11.2.1 How long did you wait?

- Your friend was very late for lunch, and now she asks how long you waited.
- **我等了你一个小时！** – "I waited for you for an hour!"

11.2.2 Verb + 了 + Duration

- **Subject + Verb + 了 + duration** = did it for that long (finished): 我睡了八个小时, 他学了两年.
- The duration comes after the verb, as in English "slept eight hours". (In a negative such as 三天没吃肉了, the length of time comes first.)

我睡了八个小时。
wǒ shuì le bā gè xiǎo shí
Word guide: 我 – I; 睡 – sleep; 八个 – eight; 小时 – hours.



11.2.3 With an object: two patterns

- Duration before the object noun: **他学了三年中文。** – "He studied Chinese for three years."
- Or repeat the verb: **他学中文学了三年。** A person object (你, 他) goes before the duration: 我等了你一个小时.

他学中文学了三年。
tā xué Zhōng wén xué le sān nián
Word guide: 他 – he; 学 – study; 中文 – Chinese; 学 – study; 三年 – three years.

11.2.4 Where the duration goes

- Duration after the verb: 我学了两年, not 我两年学了.
- With a noun object, do not put the duration last: 我学了两年中文 or 我学中文学了两年, not 我学了中文两年.

11.2.5 Finished, or still going?

- Verb + 了 + duration with no final 了 reports a finished period: 我在北京住了两年 – "I lived in Beijing for two years (then left)."
- Adding a final 了 says it is still going on; that pattern is the next lesson.

我在北京住了两年。
wǒ zài Běi jīng zhù le liǎng nián
Word guide: 我 – I; 在 – in; 北京 – Beijing; 住 – live; 两年 – two years.

11.2.6 Recap

- **Verb + 了 + duration** = did it for that long: 等了一个小时.
- With an object: 学了三年中文 or 学中文学了三年; a pronoun object comes before the duration: 等了你一个小时.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.3 ■ Verb + 了 + Duration + 了 (have been ...-ing)

11.3.1 Still waiting

- Your friend phones to ask where you are. You are still in the café where you have been since two o'clock.
- **我等了你两个小时了!** – "I've been waiting for you for two hours (and I'm still here)!"

11.3.2 Verb + 了 + Duration + 了

- **The final 了** says the period lasts up to now and may continue: 我学了三年中文了 – "I've been studying Chinese for three years."
- Without it, the period is over: 我学了三年中文 – "I studied Chinese for three years."

我学了三年中文了。

wǒ xué le sān nián Zhōng wén le
Word guide: 我 – I; 学 – study; 三年 – three years; 中文 – Chinese.



11.3.3 How long so far

- **他在这儿工作了十年了。** – "He has worked here for ten years (and still does)."
- Asking: **你学中文学了多长时间了?** – "How long have you been learning Chinese?"

他在这儿工作了十年了。
tā zài zhèr gōng zuò le shí nián le
Word guide: 他 – he; 在 – at; 这儿 – here; 工作 – work; 十年 – ten years.

11.3.4 One 了 or two

- Two 了 = still going: 住了两年了 (I still live here). One 了 = finished: 住了两年 (I moved away).
- The duration still goes after the verb: 学了三年了, not 三年学了了.

11.3.5 With 已经

- 已经 often comes in front to stress the length: **我已经等了一个小时了。** – "I've already been waiting an hour."
- The meaning of the two 了 does not change; 已经 just adds emphasis.

我已经等了一个小时了。
wǒ yǐ jīng děng le yí gè xiǎo shí le
Word guide: 我 – I; 已经 – already; 等 – wait; 一个 – one; 小时 – hour.

11.3.6 Recap

- **Verb + 了 + duration + 了** = have been doing it for that long, up to now.
- One 了 = a finished period; two 了 = still going. 已经 adds emphasis.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.4 ■ 没办法 + Verb (no way to / can't)

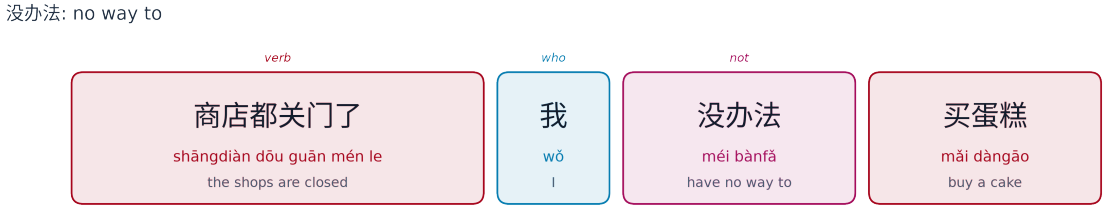
11.4.1 The shop is closed

- Your friend asks you to buy a cake on the way home, but every bakery has closed for the holiday.
- **商店都关门了，我没办法买蛋糕。** – "The shops are all shut; there's no way I can buy a cake."

11.4.2 Subject + 没办法 + Verb

- **没办法 + Verb** = "there's no way to …, can't (because the situation does not allow it)".
- It goes before the verb phrase: 我没办法帮你, 他没办法来.

对不起，我没办法帮你。
duì bu qǐ wǒ méi bàn fǎ bāng nǐ
Word guide: 对不起 – sorry; 我 – I; 没办法 – have no way to; 帮 – help; 你 – you.



11.4.3 On its own: "nothing can be done"

- As a short reply: A: 下雨了，比赛取消了。B: **没办法。** – "Oh well, nothing we can do."
- With 一点儿 for emphasis: **我一点儿办法都没有。** – "I'm completely out of ideas."

我一点儿办法都没有。
wǒ yì diǎnr bàn fǎ dōu méi yǒu
Word guide: 我 – I; 一点儿 – a bit; 办法 – way; 都 – (at all); 没有 – have not.

11.4.4 Circumstances, not skill

- 没办法 means the situation blocks you; for a skill you lack, use 不会: 我不会游泳.
- Keep 没 (not 不): 没办法, not 不办法.

11.4.5 没办法 versus 不能

- 不能 is the general "can't / not allowed": 这里不能抽烟 – "You can't smoke here."
- 没办法 suggests you have tried or thought about it and found no way: 我没办法联系他 – "I have no way of contacting him."

我没办法联系他。

wǒ méi bàn fǎ lián xì tā
Word guide: 我 – I; 没办法 – have no way to; 联系 – contact; 他 – him.

11.4.6 Recap

- **没办法 + Verb** = there's no way to …, the situation does not allow it.
- Alone, 没办法 = "nothing can be done". A missing skill is 不会; a rule is 不能.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.5 ■ Verb reduplication (do a bit / give it a try)

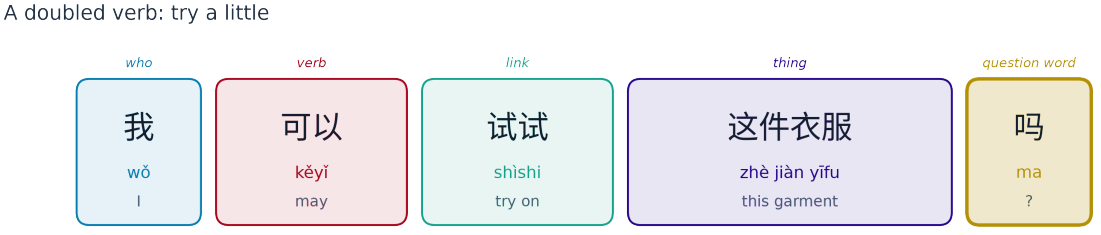
11.5.1 Can I try it on?

- You see a jacket you like in a shop and want to try it before deciding.
- **我可以试试这件衣服吗?** – "Can I try on this jacket?" Doubling the verb makes it light and casual.

11.5.2 One-syllable verbs: VV, V 一 V

- **V + V** or **V + 一 + V** = do it a little, give it a try: 看看 / 看一看, 尝尝 / 尝一尝.
- The second syllable is said lightly. The effect is softer and friendlier than the bare verb.

你尝一尝这个菜。
nǐ cháng yi chang zhè ge cài
Word guide: 你 – you; 尝 – taste; 一 – (a bit); 尝 – taste; 这个 – this; 菜 – dish.



11.5.3 Two-syllable verbs: ABAB

- A two-syllable verb doubles as a whole: 休息 → **休息休息**, 介绍 → **介绍介绍**, 讨论 → **讨论讨论**.
- **我们讨论讨论这个问题吧。** – "Let's talk this over a bit."

你累了，休息休息吧。
nǐ lèi le xiū xi xiū xi ba
Word guide: 你 – you; 累 – tired; 休息 – rest; 休息 – rest.

11.5.4 Verbs ABAB, adjectives AABB

- Two-syllable verbs repeat as ABAB (休息休息), not AABB (休休息息); AABB is for adjectives (干干净净).
- Doubling adds "a bit", so do not add a duration as well: 看看, or 看一会儿, not 看看一会儿.

11.5.5 Past tense: V 了 V

- For a short completed action, put 了 in the middle: **他看了看表，就走了。** – "He glanced at his watch and left."
- Two-syllable verbs rarely take 了 inside; use the plain verb + 了 + 一下: 我们讨论了一下.

他看了看表，就走了。
tā kàn le kan biǎo jiù zǒu le
Word guide: 他 – he; 看 – look; 看 – look; 表 – watch; 就 – then; 走 – leave.

11.5.6 Recap

- **VV / V 一 V** (看看, 看一看) and **ABAB** (休息休息) = do a bit, give it a try; softer and casual.
- Completed: **V 了 V** (看了看). Adjectives double as AABB, verbs as ABAB.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.6 ■ 很 + Verb (feeling verbs with 很)

11.6.1 How much do you like it?

- A new friend asks whether you like Chinese food. You really do.
- **我很喜欢吃中国菜。** – "I really like Chinese food."

11.6.2 很 + feeling verb

- Verbs of feeling and wanting take degree words just like adjectives: **很喜欢, 很想, 很担心, 很希望, 很爱**.
- 很 goes right before the verb: 我很想家 – "I miss home very much."

我很想家。
wǒ hěn xiǎng jiā
Word guide: 我 – I; 很 – very much; 想 – miss; 家 – home.

很 / 非常 + feeling verb: how much



11.6.3 Other degree words work too

- **我非常担心他。** – "I'm extremely worried about him."
- **我们都很希望你能来。** – "We all very much hope you can come."

我们都很希望你能来。
wǒ men dōu hěn xī wàng nǐ néng lái
Word guide: 我们 – we; 都 – all; 很 – very much; 希望 – hope; 你 – you; 能 – can; 来 – come.

11.6.4 Feeling verbs only

- Ordinary action verbs do not take 很: 很吃, 很跑, 很去 are wrong. Say 吃得很多, 跑得很快.
- Put 很 before the verb, not the object: 很喜欢这本书, not 喜欢很这本书.

11.6.5 很想 + Verb = really want to

- 想 + another verb means "want to"; 很想 strengthens it: **我很想去看看。** – "I'd really like to go and have a look."
- 很会 + Verb = "be good at": 他很会做饭 – "He's a great cook."

他很会做饭。
tā hěn huì zuò fàn
Word guide: 他 – he; 很 – very; 会 – good at; 做饭 – cooking.

11.6.6 Recap

- **很 + feeling verb** (喜欢, 想, 担心, 希望, 爱) = like / want / worry … very much.
- Action verbs do not take 很; use a 得 complement instead. 很会 = good at.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.7 ■ Practice without the models

11.7.1 难 + Verb (unpleasant to …)

0305.1 Complete: “This colour is ugly.” 这个颜色很 ……。

0305.2 Match each word to its meaning.

- 1. 难吃
- 1. 难听
- 1. 难写
- 1. 难受
- A. sounds unpleasant
- B. hard to write
- C. feel unwell
- D. tastes bad

0305.3 Which is the mildest way to say the food is not good?

- A. 不好吃。
- B. 太难吃了。
- C. 难吃极了。
- D. 很难吃。

0305.4 Build: “His question is hard to answer.”

Arrange all chunks: 很 / 回答。/ 他的问题 / 难

0305.5 You try the canteen’s new soup. It is salty and cold. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.7.2 Verb + 了 + Duration (did for a length of time)

0306.1 Complete: “I slept for ten hours yesterday.” 我昨天睡 …… 十个小时。

0306.2 Which says “She studied piano for five years.”?

- A. 她学钢琴五年了学。
- B. 她学了钢琴五年。
- C. 她五年学了钢琴。
- D. 她学了五年钢琴。

0306.3 Build: “I waited for you for an hour.”

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 等了 / 一个小时。/ 你

0306.4 我在北京住了两年 can describe a stay that has ended.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0306.5 Your friend was very late for lunch, and now she asks how long you waited. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly

in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.7.3 Verb + 了 + Duration + 了 (have been ...-ing)

0307.1 You still live here: "I've lived here for five years." 我在这儿住了五年 ……。

0307.2 Which sentence means the person still works at the bank?

- A. 他三年在银行工作。
- B. 他在银行工作了三年了。
- C. 他在银行三年工作了。
- D. 他在银行工作了三年。

0307.3 Build: "I've already been waiting for an hour."

Arrange all chunks: 等了 / 一个小时了。/ 已经 / 我

0307.4 我学了三年中文 and 我学了三年中文了 mean exactly the same.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0307.5 Your friend phones to ask where you are. You are still in the café where you have been since two o'clock. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.7.4 没办法 + Verb (no way to / can't)

0308.1 Complete: "The phone has no signal; I can't call you." 手机没有信号，我 …… 给你打电话。

0308.2 Which says "I can't swim (I never learned)."?

- A. 我游泳没办法。
- B. 我不办法游泳。
- C. 我没办法游泳。
- D. 我不会游泳。

0308.3 Build: "Sorry, there's no way I can help you."

Arrange all chunks: ， 我 / 没办法 / 对不起 / 帮你。

0308.4 没办法 can be a complete reply meaning "nothing can be done".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0308.5 Your friend asks you to buy a cake on the way home, but every bakery has closed for the holiday. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.7.5 Verb reduplication (do a bit / give it a try)

0309.1 Double the verb 看 to say "Let me have a look." 让我 ……。

0309.2 Which is the correct doubled form of 休息?

- A. 休息息
- B. 休休息息
- C. 休息休息
- D. 休休息

0309.3 Build: "He glanced at his watch and left."

Arrange all chunks: ， 就 / 看了看表 / 他 / 走了。

0309.4 你尝尝 sounds softer than 你尝.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0309.5 You see a jacket you like in a shop and want to try it before deciding. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.7.6 很 + Verb (feeling verbs with 很)

0310.1 Complete: "I miss my mum very much." 我 …… 想我妈妈。

0310.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他很喜欢米饭。
- B. 他很吃米饭。
- C. 他米饭很喜欢吃很。
- D. 他喜欢很米饭。

0310.3 Build: "We all very much hope you can come."

Arrange all chunks: 很希望 / 你 / 能来。/ 我们都

0310.4 他很会做饭 means "He is very good at cooking."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0310.5 A new friend asks whether you like Chinese food. You really do. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.8 ■ Answers and explanations

11.8.1 难 + Verb (unpleasant to …)

0305.1 难看

难看 = unpleasant to look at, ugly.

0305.2 1–D: 难吃 = tastes bad; 2–A: 难听 = sounds unpleasant; 3–B: 难写 = hard to write; 4–C: 难受 = feel unwell

With sense verbs 难 means unpleasant; with other verbs it means hard to do; 难受 is a feeling.

0305.3 A. 不好吃。

不好吃 is milder than 难吃.

0305.4 他的问题很难回答。

Topic + 很 + 难 + verb.

0305.5 One possible response: 这个汤太难喝了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 难吃 means it tastes bad, not that it is hard to eat; 难看 means ugly, not hard to see.
- 难受 is a feeling: "feel unwell, upset": 我头疼，很难受.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11.8.2 Verb + 了 + Duration (did for a length of time)

0306.1 了

Verb + 了 + duration.

0306.2 D. 她学了五年钢琴。

The duration goes between 了 and the noun object.

0306.3 我等了你一个小时。

A pronoun object comes before the duration.

0306.4 True.

With no final 了, the period is reported as complete.

0306.5 One possible response: 我等了你一个小时!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- Duration after the verb: 我学了两年, not 我两年学了.
- With a noun object, do not put the duration last: 我学了两年中文 or 我学中文学了两年, not 我学了中文两年.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11.8.3 Verb + 了 + Duration + 了 (have been ...-ing)

0307.1 了

The final 了 shows it continues up to now.

0307.2 B. 他在银行工作了三年了。

Two 了 = still going.

0307.3 我已经等了一个小时了。

已经 + verb + 了 + duration + 了.

0307.4 False.

The first is a finished period; the second continues up to now.

0307.5 One possible response: 我等了你两个小时了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Two 了 = still going: 住了两年了 (I still live here). One 了 = finished: 住了两年 (I moved away).
- The duration still goes after the verb: 学了三年了, not 三年学了了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11.8.4 没办法 + Verb (no way to / can't)

0308.1 没办法

The situation blocks the call, so 没办法 + verb.

0308.2 D. 我不会游泳。

A skill you have not learned takes 不会.

0308.3 对不起，我没办法帮你。

Subject + 没办法 + verb phrase.

0308.4 True.

It is a common short reply when a situation cannot be changed.

0308.5 One possible response: 商店都关门了，我没办法买蛋糕。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 没办法 means the situation blocks you; for a skill you lack, use 不会: 我不会游泳.
- Keep 没 (not 不): 没办法, not 不办法.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11.8.5 Verb reduplication (do a bit / give it a try)

0309.1 看看

VV or V 一 V makes it a light "have a look".

0309.2 C. 休息休息

Two-syllable verbs repeat as ABAB.

0309.3 他看了看表，就走了。

V 了 V for a brief completed action.

0309.4 True.

Doubling makes an invitation light and friendly.

0309.5 One possible response: 我可以试试这件衣服吗?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Two-syllable verbs repeat as ABAB (休息休息), not AABB (休休息息); AABB is for adjectives (干干净净).
- Doubling adds "a bit", so do not add a duration as well: 看看, or 看一会儿, not 看看一会儿.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11.8.6 很 + Verb (feeling verbs with 很)

0310.1 很

Feeling verbs such as 想 take 很.

0310.2 A. 他很喜欢米饭。

很 + feeling verb is correct; an action verb such as 吃 does not take 很.

0310.3 我们都很希望你能来。

都 + 很 + feeling verb + clause.

0310.4 True.

很会 + verb = be good at doing it.

0310.5 One possible response: 我很喜欢吃中国菜。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Ordinary action verbs do not take 很: 很吃, 很跑, 很去 are wrong. Say 吃得很多, 跑得很快.
- Put 很 before the verb, not the object: 很喜欢这本书, not 喜欢很这本书.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12 Complements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

12.1 ■ Direction complement 来 / 去 (toward / away)

12.1.1 Come in, go out

- A friend knocks at your door; later your little brother runs off to play outside.
- **请进来！** – "Please come in!" **他出去了。** – "He's gone out." 来 is towards the speaker, 去 is away.

12.1.2 Verb + 来 / 去

- **来** = movement towards the speaker; **去** = movement away from the speaker.
- Combine with direction verbs: 进来/进去, 出来/出去, 上来/上去, 下来/下去, 回来/回去, 过来/过去.

你快下来吧！
nǐ kuài xià lai ba
Word guide: 你 – you; 快 – quickly; 下来 – come down.



12.1.3 A place goes before 来 / 去

- **Verb + place + 来/去**: **他回家去了。** – "He has gone back home." **快进教室来！** – "Come into the classroom, quick!"
- A thing you carry can come after: 他带来了一本书 / 他带了一本书来.

他回家去了。
tā huí jiā qù le
Word guide: 他 – he; 回 – return; 家 – home; 去 – (away).

12.1.4 The speaker decides 来 or 去

- Choose by where the speaker is: you are upstairs → 上来 (come up); you are downstairs → 上去 (go up).

- A place word never comes after 来/去: 进教室来, not 进来教室.

12.1.5 拿来, 带去, 送来

- Bringing and taking work the same way: **请把书拿来。** – “Please bring the book (here).”
- **我给他送去了一些水果。** – “I took some fruit over to him.”

请把书拿来。
qǐng bǎ shū ná lái
Word guide: 请 – please; 书 – the book; 拿 – bring; 来 – (here).

12.1.6 Recap

- **Verb + 来** = towards the speaker; **Verb + 去** = away from the speaker.
- A place goes before 来/去 (回家去, 进教室来); 拿来/带去 work the same way.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.2 ■ Potential complement 得 / 不 (can / can’t do it)

12.2.1 Can you understand him?

- Your teacher speaks quickly at the start of a new course, and your friend wonders if you follow.
- **老师说得太快，我听不懂。** – “The teacher talks too fast; I can’t understand.”

12.2.2 Verb + 得 / 不 + result

- **Verb + 得 + result** = can (manage to) do it; **Verb + 不 + result** = can’t: 听得懂 / 听不懂, 看得见 / 看不见.
- It says whether the result is possible, not whether you are allowed.

我听得懂中文。
wǒ tīng de dǒng Zhōng wén
Word guide: 我 – I; 听 – listen; 得 – (can); 懂 – understand; 中文 – Chinese.



12.2.3 Common pairs

- **看不见** (can't see), **买不到** (can't get hold of), **吃不完** (can't finish eating), **来得及** (there's still time).
- **这么多菜，我们吃不完。** – "This much food – we can't finish it."

这么多菜，我们吃不完。
zhè me duō cài wǒ men chī bu wán
Word guide: 这么 – so; 多 – much; 菜 – food; 我们 – we; 吃 – eat; 不 – (cannot); 完 – finish.

12.2.4 Where 不 goes

- 不 goes between the verb and the result: 听不懂, not 不听懂.
- Ask with both forms: 你听得懂听不懂？ or 你听得懂吗?

12.2.5 听不懂 versus 没听懂

- 听不懂 = can't understand (it is beyond me): 他的上海话我听不懂.
- 没听懂 = didn't understand (this time): 对不起，我没听懂，请再说一遍。

对不起，我没听懂。
duì bu qǐ wǒ méi tīng dǒng
Word guide: 对不起 – sorry; 我 – I; 没 – did not; 听懂 – understand.

12.2.6 Recap

- **Verb + 得 + result** = can; **Verb + 不 + result** = can't (看得见 / 看不见).
- 不 sits between verb and result. 没 + verb + result = it did not happen this time.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.3 ■ Verb + 下去 (keep ...-ing)

12.3.1 Don't stop now

- You are halfway through a story and your listener is hooked.
- **说下去，后来怎么样了？** – "Keep going – what happened next?"

12.3.2 Verb + 下去

- **Verb + 下去** = keep on doing, continue from now into the future: 说下去, 读下去, 住下去.
- It is often used with 继续, 要, 想 or 能: 我想在这儿住下去.

请继续说下去。
qǐng jì xù shuō xià qu
Word guide: 请 – please; 继续 – continue; 说 – speak; 下去 – (keep on).



12.3.3 Perseverance

- **学中文不容易，但是你要坚持下去。** – “Learning Chinese isn’t easy, but you must keep going.”
- **这样下去不行。** – “It can’t go on like this.” 这样下去 = if things continue this way.

这样下去不行。
zhè yàng xià qu bù xíng
Word guide: 这样 – like this; 下去 – (go on); 不 – not; 行 – OK.

12.3.4 Continuing, not going down

- In this pattern 下去 means “continue”, not physical movement down: 读下去 = keep reading.
- With 不 for “can’t go on”: 我听不下去了 – “I can’t bear to listen any more.”

12.3.5 下去 versus 起来

- 下去 continues something already going: 唱下去 – “keep singing”.
- 起来 starts something new: 唱起来 – “start singing”: 大家都唱起来了。

大家都唱起来了。
dà jiā dōu chàng qǐ lai le
Word guide: 大家 – everyone; 都 – all; 唱 – sing; 起来 – (start).

12.3.6 Recap

- **Verb + 下去** = keep on doing it, carry on (说下去, 坚持下去).
- 这样下去 = if this continues; 听不下去 = can’t bear to go on. 起来 = start.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.4 ■ Result complements 好 / 完 / 错 (how it turned out)

12.4.1 Finished or not?

- Your mum asks about your homework before you go out to play.
- **作业我做完了！** – "I've finished my homework!" 完 tells the result of the action: it is finished.

12.4.2 Verb + result complement

- **Verb + 好 / 完 / 错** tells how the action ended: 做好 (done properly), 吃完 (eaten up), 写错 (written wrongly).
- 了 normally follows the result: 我写完了, 他看错了.

我写错了一个字。
wǒ xiě cuò le yí gè zì
Word guide: 我 – I; 写 – write; 错 – wrongly; 一个 – one; 字 – character.



12.4.3 Ready, finished, wrong

- **好** = done and ready: **饭做好了，快来吃吧！** – "Dinner's ready, come and eat!"
- **完** = finished, nothing left: 这本书我看完了. **错** = wrong: 对不起，我打错电话了。

饭做好了，快来吃吧！
fàn zuò hǎo le kuài lái chī ba
Word guide: 饭 – dinner; 做 – make; 好 – ready; 快 – quickly; 来 – come; 吃 – eat.

12.4.4 Negate with 没, keep the pair together

- Negate with 没 and drop 了: 我还没做完, not 我不做完了.
- Nothing comes between the verb and its result: 做完作业, not 做作业完.

12.4.5 做完 versus 做好

- 做完 = finished, the job is over (maybe not well done).
- 做好 = done properly, ready to use: **你准备好了吗？** – "Are you ready?"

你准备好了吗？

nǐ zhǔn bèi hǎo le ma
Word guide: 你 – you; 准备 – prepare; 好 – ready.

12.4.6 Recap

- **Verb + 好 / 完 / 错 (+ 了)** = done properly / finished / done wrongly.
- Negative: **没 + Verb + result** (还没做完). The result follows the verb directly.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.5 ■ Practice without the models

12.5.1 Direction complement 来 / 去 (toward / away)

0311.1 You are inside the room and call to your friend at the door: "Come in!" 进 ……!

0311.2 You are on the ground floor talking about your friend upstairs: "He went up." Which fits?

- A. 他来上了。
- B. 他上去了。
- C. 他上来了。
- D. 他去上了。

0311.3 Build: "Come into the classroom, quick!"

Arrange all chunks: 快 / 来! / 教室 / 进

0311.4 他进来教室了 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0311.5 A friend knocks at your door; later your little brother runs off to play outside. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.5.2 Potential complement 得 / 不 (can / can't do it)

0312.1 The words on the board are too small: "I can't see clearly." 我看 …… 清楚。

0312.2 Which says "I can't understand Cantonese."?

- A. 我不听懂广东话。
- B. 我没听得懂广东话。
- C. 我听懂不广东话。
- D. 我听不懂广东话。

0312.3 Match each form to its meaning.

- 1. 买不到
- 1. 吃不完

- 1. 来得及
- 1. 看得见
- A. there's still time
- B. can't finish eating
- C. can't get hold of
- D. can see

0312.4 Build: "This much food – we can't finish it."

Arrange all chunks: 这么多菜 / 我们 / ， / 吃不完。

0312.5 Your teacher speaks quickly at the start of a new course, and your friend wonders if you follow. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.5.3 Verb + 下去 (keep ...-ing)

0313.1 Encourage: "Keep reading!" 读 ……！

0313.2 Everyone suddenly started laughing. Which fits? 大家都笑 _____ 了。

- A. 过去
- B. 下去
- C. 上去
- D. 起来

0313.3 Build: "It can't go on like this."

Arrange all chunks: 下去 / 不行。/ 这样

0313.4 In 说下去, 下去 means the speaker walks downstairs.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0313.5 You are halfway through a story and your listener is hooked. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.5.4 Result complements 好 / 完 / 错 (how it turned out)

0314.1 Complete: "I've eaten up all the dumplings." 饺子我都吃 …… 了。

0314.2 Which says "I haven't finished reading this book yet."?

- A. 这本书我还没看完。
- B. 这本书我还看没完。
- C. 这本书我还没看完了。
- D. 这本书我还不看完了。

0314.3 Match each phrase to its meaning.

- 1. 做好了
- 1. 做完了
- 1. 写错了
- A. written wrongly
- B. finished
- C. done and ready

0314.4 Build: “Are you ready?”

Arrange all chunks: 准备好 / 了 / 吗? / 你

0314.5 Your mum asks about your homework before you go out to play. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.6 ■ Answers and explanations

12.6.1 Direction complement 来 / 去 (toward / away)

0311.1 来

Movement towards the speaker takes 来.

0311.2 B. 他上去了。

He moved away from you (upwards), so 上去.

0311.3 快进教室来!

Verb + place + 来.

0311.4 False.

The place goes before 来: 他进教室来了.

0311.5 One possible response: 请进来!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Choose by where the speaker is: you are upstairs → 上来 (come up); you are downstairs → 上去 (go up).
- A place word never comes after 来/去: 进教室来, not 进来教室.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.6.2 Potential complement 得 / 不 (can / can't do it)

0312.1 不

Verb + 不 + result = can't. 看不清楚 = can't see clearly.

0312.2 D. 我听不懂广东话。

不 goes between the verb and the result.

0312.3 1–C: 买不到 = can't get hold of; 2–B: 吃不完 = can't finish eating; 3–A: 来得及 = there's still time; 4–D: 看得见 = can see

Verb + 得/不 + result says whether the result is possible.

0312.4 这么多菜，我们吃不完。

Verb + 不 + 完 = can't finish.

0312.5 One possible response: 老师说得太快，我听不懂。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不 goes between the verb and the result: 听不懂, not 不听懂.

- Ask with both forms: 你听得懂听不懂? or 你听得懂吗?
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.6.3 Verb + 下去 (keep ...-ing)

0313.1 下去

Verb + 下去 = continue doing it.

0313.2 D. 起来

Starting a new action takes 起来; 下去 continues an action already going.

0313.3 这样下去不行。

这样下去 + 不行.

0313.4 False.

Here 下去 means "continue".

0313.5 One possible response: 说下去，后来怎么样了?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- In this pattern 下去 means "continue", not physical movement down: 读下去 = keep reading.
- With 不 for "can't go on": 我听不下去了 – "I can't bear to listen any more."
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.6.4 Result complements 好 / 完 / 错 (how it turned out)

0314.1 完

吃完 = eaten up, finished.

0314.2 A. 这本书我还没看完。

没 + verb + result, with no 了.

0314.3 1–C: 做好了 = done and ready; 2–B: 做完了 = finished; 3–A: 写错了 = written wrongly

The result word tells how the action ended.

0314.4 你准备好了吗?

准备 + 好 + 了 + 吗.

0314.5 One possible response: 作业我做完了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Negate with 没 and drop 了: 我还没做完, not 我不做完了.
- Nothing comes between the verb and its result: 做完作业, not 做作业完.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

13 Conditional Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

13.1 ■ 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

13.1.1 If the weather holds

- A friend is worried about tomorrow's picnic. You only need one thing to go right.
- **只要不下雨，我们就去野餐。** – "As long as it doesn't rain, we'll go on the picnic."

13.1.2 只要 + condition，就 + result

- **只要 A，就 B** = "as long as A, then B": A is enough for B to happen.
- 只要 opens the first clause; 就 comes after the subject of the second.

只要你努力，就能学好。
zhǐ yào nǐ nǔ lì jiù néng xué hǎo
Word guide: 只要 – as long as; 你 – you; 努力 – work hard; 就 – then; 能 – can; 学好 – learn well.



13.1.3 Encouragement and easy conditions

- **只要每天练习，你的中文就会越来越好。** – "As long as you practise every day, your Chinese will keep improving."
- **只要有时间，我就去看你。** – "Whenever I have time, I'll come and see you."

只要有时间，我就去看你。
zhǐ yào yǒu shí jiān wǒ jiù qù kàn nǐ
Word guide: 只要 – as long as; 有 – have; 时间 – time; 我 – I; 就 – then; 去 – go; 看 – see; 你 – you.

13.1.4 就 after the subject

- Put 就 after the subject of the second clause: 只要你来，我就高兴, not 就我高兴.
- 只要 means the condition is enough; for "only if" (a necessary condition), use 只有 … 才 ….

13.1.5 只要 … 就 versus 只有 … 才

- 只要 A 就 B: A is sufficient, it is easy: 只要有钱就能买.
- 只有 A 才 B: A is the only way: **只有努力，才能成功。** – “Only through hard work can you succeed.”

只有努力，才能成功。
zhǐ yǒu nǔ lì cái néng chéng gōng
Word guide: 只有 – only if; 努力 – work hard; 才 – only then; 能 – can; 成功 – succeed.

13.1.6 Recap

- **只要 A，(Subject) 就 B** = as long as A, then B (A is enough).
- 就 follows the subject. A necessary condition uses 只有 … 才 ….

Practise this pattern step by step.

13.2 ■ … ，才 … (only then / only after)

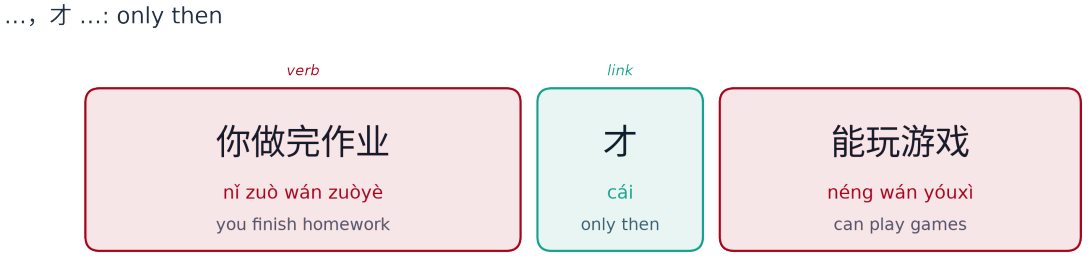
13.2.1 Only after you finish

- Your parents have one rule about screen time on school nights.
- **你做完作业，才能玩游戏。** – “You can only play games after you finish your homework.”

13.2.2 Condition，Subject + 才 + Verb

- **A，才 B** = “only after / only if A, B”: B depends on A happening first.
- 才 follows the subject of the second clause and often goes with 能 or 会: 才能, 才会.

你做完作业，才能玩游戏。
nǐ zuò wán zuò yè cái néng wán yóu xì
Word guide: 你 – you; 做完 – finish; 作业 – homework; 才 – only then; 能 – can; 玩 – play; 游戏 – games.



13.2.3 Effort before a result

- **你多说，才能说好。** – "Only by speaking a lot will you speak well."
- **我问了他三次，他才告诉我。** – "I asked him three times before he told me."

我问了他三次，他才告诉我。
wǒ wèn le tā sān cì tā cái gào su wǒ
Word guide: 我 – I; 问 – asked; 他 – him; 三次 – three times; 他 – he; 才 – only then; 告诉 – told; 我 – me.

13.2.4 Place 才 before the result predicate

- Put 才 after the subject of the result: 他才告诉我, not 才他告诉我.
- The simple result model here is 他才告诉我. Other contexts can allow 了; the whole construction matters.

13.2.5 Stronger with 只有

- Adding 只有 explicitly makes this a necessary condition: **只有做完作业，才能玩游戏。**
- Without 只有, … 才 … still implies the condition must come first.

只有做完作业，才能玩。
zhǐ yǒu zuò wán zuò yè cái néng wán
Word guide: 只有 – only if; 做完 – finish; 作业 – homework; 才 – only then; 能 – can; 玩 – play.

13.2.6 Recap

- **A，Subject + 才 (能/会) + B** = only after / only if A, B.
- 才 follows the subject in this frame; 只有 makes the condition necessary, without guaranteeing the result by itself.

Practise this pattern step by step.

13.3 ■ 只有 … ，才 … (only if)

13.3.1 The only way in

- The building door needs a code, and only residents know it.
- **只有知道密码，才能进去。** – "Only if you know the code can you get in."

13.3.2 只有 A，才 B

- **只有 A，才 B** = "only if A, (then) B": A is the one and only condition.
- 才 goes after the subject of the second clause, often with 能 or 会.

只有多练习，才能说好。
zhǐ yǒu duō liàn xí cái néng shuō hǎo
Word guide: 只有 – only if; 多 – a lot; 练习 – practise; 才 – only then; 能 – can; 说好 – speak well.

只有 …，才 …: only if



13.3.3 Only this person, only this way

- With a person: **只有他才知道答案。** – "Only he knows the answer."
- With a method: **只有坐飞机，才能今天到。** – "Only by flying can we arrive today."

只有他才知道答案。
zhǐ yǒu tā cái zhī dào dá àn
Word guide: 只有 – only; 他 – he; 才 – (then); 知道 – knows; 答案 – the answer.

13.3.4 才, not 就

- Pair 只有 with 才: 只有你去，他才会去, not 只有你去，他就会去.
- Put 才 after the subject: 他才会去, not 才他会去.

13.3.5 只有 … 才 versus 只要 … 就

- 只有 A 才 B: A is necessary – no A, no B.
- 只要 A 就 B: A is enough – easy: **只要有护照，就能买票。** – "All you need is a passport to buy a ticket."

只要有护照，就能买票。
zhǐ yào yǒu hù zhào jiù néng mǎi piào
Word guide: 只要 – as long as; 有 – have; 护照 – a passport; 就 – then; 能 – can; 买票 – buy a ticket.

13.3.6 Recap

- **只有 A，才 B** = only if A, B (A is necessary).
- **只要 A，就 B** = as long as A, B (A is enough). 只有 pairs with 才, 只要 with 就.

Practise this pattern step by step.

13.4 ■ Practice without the models

13.4.1 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

0708.1 Complete: "As long as you ask, he will help you." 只要你问，他 …… 会帮你。

0708.2 Which pair fits "Only by taking a taxi can you get there in time"? _____ 打车，你 _____ 来得及。

- A. 因为 … 所以
- B. 只有 … 才
- C. 虽然 … 但是
- D. 只要 … 就

0708.3 Build: “Whenever I have time, I’ll come and see you.”

Arrange all chunks: 只要有时间 / 去看你。/ ， / 我就

0708.4 只要你来，就我很高兴 has the correct word order.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0708.5 A friend is worried about tomorrow’s picnic. You only need one thing to go right. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

13.4.2 … ，才 … (only then / only after)

0709.1 Complete: “You can only go out after you’ve eaten.” 你吃了饭，…… 能出去。

0709.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我等了很久，他才来。
- B. 我等了很久，他来我才。
- C. 我等了很久，才他来。
- D. 我等了很久，他来才。

0709.3 Build: “I asked him three times before he told me.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 我问了他三次 / 他才 / 告诉我。

0709.4 只有做完作业，才能玩游戏 makes finishing homework necessary, without proving it is sufficient by itself.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0709.5 Your parents have one rule about screen time on school nights. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

13.4.3 只有 … ，才 … (only if)

0710.1 Complete: “Only if you rest well will you get better quickly.” 只有好好休息，…… 能快点好。

0710.2 “All you need is a student card to get in for free.” Which pair fits? _____ 有学生证，_____ 能免费进去。

- A. 只要 … 就

- B. 只有 … 才
- C. 只有 … 就
- D. 只要 … 才

0710.3 Build: “Only he knows the answer.”

Arrange all chunks: 才 / 知道 / 只有他 / 答案。

0710.4 只有你去，他就会去 is the standard pairing.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0710.5 The building door needs a code, and only residents know it. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

13.5 ■ Answers and explanations

13.5.1 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

0708.1 就

只要 …，就 ….

0708.2 B. 只有 … 才

The only way is 只有 … 才 ….

0708.3 只要有时间，我就去看你。

只要 + condition, subject + 就 + result.

0708.4 False.

就 follows the subject: 我就很高兴.

0708.5 One possible response: 只要不下雨，我们就去野餐。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 就 after the subject of the second clause: 只要你来，我就高兴, not 就我高兴.
- 只要 means the condition is enough; for "only if" (a necessary condition), use 只有 … 才 ….
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

13.5.2 … ，才 … (only then / only after)

0709.1 才

Condition, then 才 + 能 + result.

0709.2 A. 我等了很久，他才来。

才 follows the result-clause subject and precedes 来. These models do not impose a general ban on 了.

0709.3 我问了他三次，他才告诉我。

Effort, then subject + 才 + result.

0709.4 True.

Only if A, B makes A necessary for B. Other conditions can also apply.

0709.5 One possible response: 你做完作业，才能玩游戏。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 才 after the subject of the result: 他才告诉我, not 才他告诉我.

- The simple result model here is 他才告诉我. Other contexts can allow 了; the whole construction matters.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

13.5.3 只有 … ，才 … (only if)

0710.1 才

只有 pairs with 才.

0710.2 A. 只要 … 就

A student card is enough, so 只要 … 就 ….

0710.3 只有他才知道答案。

只有 + person + 才 + verb.

0710.4 False.

只有 pairs with 才: 他才会去.

0710.5 One possible response: 只有知道密码，才能进去。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Pair 只有 with 才: 只有你去，他才会去, not 只有你去，他就会去.
- Put 才 after the subject: 他才会去, not 才他会去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14 Noun Phrases

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

14.1 ■ 有的 (some / some..., others...)

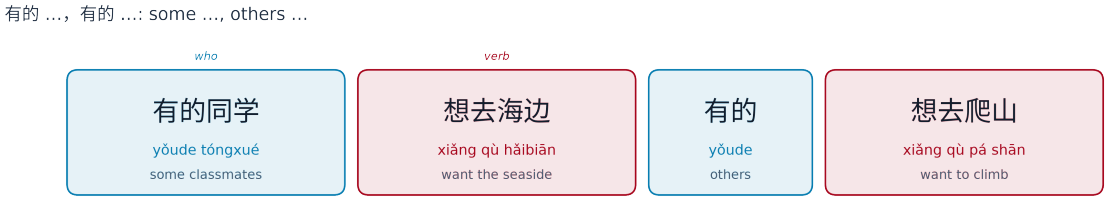
14.1.1 Not everyone agrees

- Your class votes on a trip. Some want the beach, others want the mountains.
- **有的同学想去海边，有的想去爬山。** – "Some classmates want to go to the beach; others want to go hiking."

14.1.2 有的 + Noun

- **有的 + noun** = "some (of them)": 有的人, 有的书, 有的时候. It stands before the subject noun.
- Repeat it to contrast groups: 有的 …，有的 ….

有的人喜欢喝茶。
yǒu de rén xǐ huan hē chá
Word guide: 有的 – some; 人 – people; 喜欢 – like; 喝 – drinking; 茶 – tea.



14.1.3 有的 ...，有的 ... and 有的时候

- **这些书有的很有意思，有的很无聊。** – "Some of these books are interesting; some are boring."
- **有的时候** (often 有时候) = sometimes: 我有时候走路上班。

我有时候走路上班。
wǒ yǒu shí hou zǒu lù shàng bān
Word guide: 我 – I; 有时候 – sometimes; 走路 – walk; 上班 – to work.

14.1.4 有的 goes before the subject

- Put 有的 in subject position: 有的人不喜欢, not 我不喜欢有的人 for "some people don't like it".
- With an object you know, put the topic first: 这些菜，有的我没吃过 – "Some of these dishes I haven't tried."

14.1.5 有的 versus 一些

- 一些 = "some, a few" and can go in object position: 我买了一些水果.
- 有的 picks out part of a group, usually as the subject, often in contrast: 有的贵，有的便宜.

我买了一些水果。
wǒ mǎi le yì xiē shuǐ guǒ
Word guide: 我 – I; 买 – bought; 一些 – some; 水果 – fruit.

14.1.6 Recap

- **有的 + noun** = some (of a group), in subject position; **有的 ..., 有的 ...** = some..., others....
- 有时候 = sometimes. For "some" as an object, use 一些.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.2 ■ Practice without the models

14.2.1 有的 (some / some..., others...)

0515.1 Complete: "Some students live at school." …… 学生住在学校。

0515.2 Which says "I bought some apples."?

- A. 我有的买了苹果。
- B. 我买了一些苹果。
- C. 有的我买了苹果。
- D. 我买了有的苹果。

0515.3 Build: "Some of these books are interesting; some are boring."

Arrange all chunks: 有的很有意思 / 有的很无聊。/ 这些书 / ，

0515.4 有时候 means "sometimes".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0515.5 Your class votes on a trip. Some want the beach, others want the mountains. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.3 ■ Answers and explanations

14.3.1 有的 (some / some..., others...)

0515.1 有的

有的 + noun in subject position.

0515.2 B. 我买了一些苹果。

In object position, "some" is 一些.

0515.3 这些书有的很有意思，有的很无聊。

Topic, then 有的 …，有的 ….

0515.4 True.

有 (的) 时候 = sometimes.

0515.5 One possible response: 有的同学想去海边，有的想去爬山。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 有的 in subject position: 有的人不喜欢, not 我不喜欢有的人 for "some people don't like it".
- With an object you know, put the topic first: 这些菜，有的我没吃过 – "Some of these dishes I haven't tried."
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

15 Numbers and Measure Words

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

15.1 ■ 半 (half / and a half)

15.1.1 Half a cake left

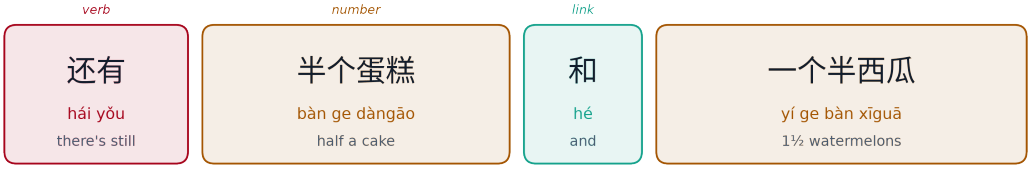
- After the party, your mum looks at the table and counts what is left.
- **还有半个蛋糕和一个半西瓜。** – "There's half a cake and one and a half watermelons left."

15.1.2 半 + measure word (half a …)

- **半 + measure word + noun** = half a …: 半个苹果, 半杯水, 半年.
- 半 comes before the measure word, with no 一 in front.

我喝了半杯牛奶。
wǒ hē le bàn bēi niú nǎi
Word guide: 我 – I; 喝 – drank; 半 – half; 杯 – a glass; 牛奶 – of milk.

半个 · 一个半: half and one and a half



15.1.3 Number + measure word + 半 (… and a half)

- **Number + measure word + 半** = … and a half: 一个半小时 (an hour and a half), 两年半 (two and a half years).
- With time: 三点半 = half past three.

我等了一个半小时。
wǒ děng le yí gè bàn xiǎo shí
Word guide: 我 – I; 等 – waited; 一个 – one; 半 – and a half; 小时 – hours.

15.1.4 Where 半 goes

- Half a … : 半 before the measure word (半个小时). … and a half: 半 after it (一个半小时).
- Do not say 一半个 or 一个小时半: say 半个 and 一个半小时.

15.1.5 一半 = half of something

- **一半** is a noun: half (of a whole): **一半的学生是女生。** – "Half of the students are girls."
- 我只吃了一半 – "I only ate half (of it)."

一半的学生是女生。
yí bàn de xué sheng shì nǚ shēng
Word guide: 一半 – half; 学生 – students; 是 – are; 女生 – girls.

15.1.6 Recap

- **半 + MW** = half a …; **Number + MW + 半** = … and a half; **X 点半** = half past X.
- **一半** = half of something, a noun.

Practise this pattern step by step.

15.2 ■ Practice without the models

15.2.1 半 (half / and a half)

0516.1 Complete: "The film is two and a half hours long." 电影有两个 …… 小时。

0516.2 Which says "half an hour"?

- A. 小时半
- B. 一个小时半
- C. 一半个小时
- D. 半个小时

0516.3 Match each phrase to its meaning.

- 1. 半年
- 1. 一年半
- 1. 一半
- 1. 三点半
- A. half past three
- B. half a year
- C. half (of it)
- D. a year and a half

0516.4 一个小时半 is the usual way to say "an hour and a half".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0516.5 After the party, your mum looks at the table and counts what is left. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

15.3 ■ Answers and explanations

15.3.1 半 (half / and a half)

0516.1 半

Number + MW + 半 + noun = two and a half hours.

0516.2 D. 半个小时

半 + MW + noun.

0516.3 1–B: 半年 = half a year; 2–D: 一年半 = a year and a half; 3–C: 一半 = half (of it); 4–A: 三点半 = half past three

半 before the MW is "half a"; after it, "and a half"; 一半 is the noun.

0516.4 False.

Say 一个半小时.

0516.5 One possible response: 还有半个蛋糕和一个半西瓜。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Half a … : 半 before the measure word (半个小时). … and a half: 半 after it (一个半小时).
- Do not say 一半个 or 一个小时半: say 半个 and 一个半小时.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

16 Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

16.1 ■ 一 … 也 / 都 … 不 / 没 (not even one)

16.1.1 Not a single yuan

- At the end of the month your wallet is completely empty.
- **我一块钱也没有了。** – "I don't have a single yuan left."

16.1.2 一 + MW + Noun + 也 / 都 + 不 / 没

- **一 + measure word + noun + 也/都 + 没/不 + verb** = "not even one", a strong negative.
- The object moves before the verb, after the subject: 我一个人也不认识 – "I don't know a single person."

我一个人也不认识。
wǒ yí ge rén yě bú rèn shi
Word guide: 我 – I; 一 – one; 个 – (measure word); 人 – person; 也 – even; 不 – not; 认识 – know.



16.1.3 没 for the past, 不 for habits and wishes

- **他今天一口饭都没吃。** – "He hasn't eaten a single mouthful today."
- **这个周末我一点儿也不想出去。** – "I don't want to go out at all this weekend." 一点儿也不 = not at all.

他今天一口饭都没吃。
tā jīn tiān yì kǒu fàn dōu méi chī
Word guide: 他 – he; 今天 – today; 一口 – one mouthful; 饭 – food; 都 – even; 没 – not; 吃 – eat.

16.1.4 The object comes first

- Move the "one" phrase before the verb: 我一本书也没买, not 我没买一本书也.
- Choose 没 for something that did not happen, 不 for a habit, wish or refusal: 一口也不想吃.

16.1.5 一点儿也不 + Adjective

- With adjectives: **今天一点儿也不冷。** – "It isn't cold at all today."
- 也 and 都 are interchangeable here; 也 is slightly more common in speech.

今天一点儿也不冷。
jīn tiān yì diǎnr yě bù lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 一点儿 – a bit; 也 – even; 不 – not; 冷 – cold.

16.1.6 Recap

- **一 + MW + Noun + 也/都 + 没/不 + Verb** = not a single …; the phrase goes before the verb.
- **一点儿也不 + Adj** = not at all. 没 for what didn't happen, 不 for habits and wishes.

Practise this pattern step by step.

16.2 ■ 越 … 越 … (the more …, the more …)

16.2.1 The longer it rains

- You are waiting for the rain to stop, but it only gets heavier.
- **雨越下越大。** – "The rain is getting heavier and heavier (the longer it falls)."

16.2.2 越 A 越 B

- **越 A 越 B** = "the more A, the more B": B grows as A increases. Each 越 goes before a verb or adjective.
- One subject: 他越说越快. Two subjects: 你越解释，我越不明白.

他越说越快。
tā yuè shuō yuè kuài
Word guide: 他 – he; 越 – the more; 说 – talk; 越 – the more; 快 – fast.



16.2.3 Two subjects, two clauses

- **你越练习，说得越好。** – "The more you practise, the better you speak."
- **天越冷，人越少。** – "The colder it gets, the fewer people there are."

你越练习，说得越好。
nǐ yuè liàn xí shuō de yuè hǎo
Word guide: 你 – you; 越 – the more; 练习 – practise; 说 – speak; 越 – the more; 好 – well.

16.2.4 越 replaces 很

- No 很 after 越: 越来越好 and 越说越快, not 越说越很快.
- Each 越 sits after its own subject: 天越冷，人越少, not 越天冷，越人少.

16.2.5 越 A 越 B versus 越来越

- 越来越 + Adj = more and more over time: 天气越来越冷.
- 越 A 越 B ties the growth to something else: 越想越生气 – "the more I think about it, the angrier I get."

我越想越生气。
wǒ yuè xiǎng yuè shēng qì
Word guide: 我 – I; 越 – the more; 想 – think; 越 – the more; 生气 – angry.

16.2.6 Recap

- **越 A 越 B** = the more A, the more B; each 越 before its verb or adjective.
- With two subjects: 天越冷，人越少. No 很. 越来越 = growth over time alone.

Practise this pattern step by step.

16.3 ■ 把 sentences (do something to the object)

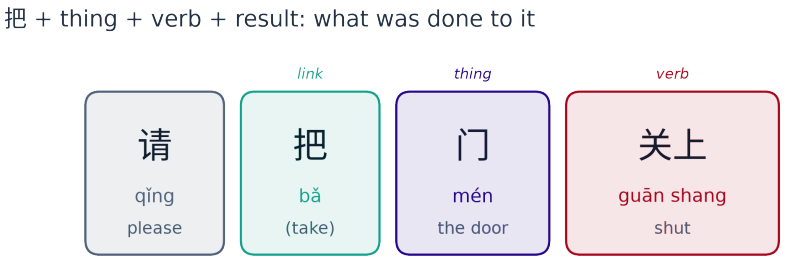
16.3.1 Close the door, please

- It is cold, and your little brother has left the door wide open again.
- **请把门关上。** – "Please shut the door." 把 brings the object forward and says what happens to it.

16.3.2 Subject + 把 + Object + Verb + result

- **把 + object** comes before the verb; the verb must have something after it: a result, a direction, 了, or a place.
- 我把作业做完了 – "I've finished the homework." 他把书放在桌子上 – "He put the book on the table."

他把书放在桌子上。
tā bǎ shū fàng zài zhuō zi shang
Word guide: 他 – he; 书 – the book; 放 – put; 在 – on; 桌子 – the table; 上 – (on).



16.3.3 Moving, changing, finishing

- Moving something: **请把垃圾拿出去。** – "Please take the rubbish out."
- Changing something: **我把这个句子翻译成英文了。** – "I translated this sentence into English."

请把垃圾拿出去。
qǐng bǎ lā jī ná chū qu
Word guide: 请 – please; 垃圾 – the rubbish; 拿 – take; 出去 – out.

16.3.4 The verb cannot stand alone

- 我把饭吃 is incomplete. Add a result or 了: 我把饭吃完了.
- The affected object is normally identifiable in the situation. These examples use a known book or door; indefinite objects can also occur with an appropriate context.

16.3.5 Negatives and 别

- 没 / 不 / 别 go before 把: **我没把钥匙带来。** – "I didn't bring the keys." **别把手机忘在家里!** – "Don't leave your phone at home!"
- Feeling and knowing verbs (喜欢, 知道) do not take 把.

别把手机忘在家里!
bié bǎ shǒu jī wàng zài jiā li
Word guide: 别 – don't; 手机 – your phone; 忘 – forget; 在 – at; 家里 – home.

16.3.6 Recap

- **Subject + 把 + specific object + Verb + something** (result, direction, place, 了).
- Negative words go before 把. Not with feeling or knowing verbs.

Practise this pattern step by step.

16.4 ■ 被 sentences (the passive)

16.4.1 Where's my bike?

- You come out of the library and your bike is gone.
- **我的自行车被人偷了！** – "My bike has been stolen!"

16.4.2 Receiver + 被 (+ doer) + Verb + result

- **被** marks the passive: the subject receives the action. The doer can follow 被 or be left out.
- As with 把, the verb needs something after it: 了, a result or a place.

我的自行车被偷了。
wǒ de zì xíng chē bèi tōu le
Word guide: 我 – my; 自行车 – bike; 被 – (was); 偷 – stolen.



16.4.3 Often bad news

- 被 sentences often report something unwelcome: **他被老师批评了。** – "He was told off by the teacher."
- **蛋糕被弟弟吃完了。** – "The cake was eaten up by my little brother."

蛋糕被弟弟吃完了。
dàn gāo bèi dì di chī wán le
Word guide: 蛋糕 – the cake; 被 – by; 弟弟 – my younger brother; 吃 – eat; 完 – up.

16.4.4 Complete verb, negative first

- The verb cannot stand alone: 自行车被偷了, not 自行车被偷.
- Put 没 before 被: 我的手机没被偷, not 我的手机被没偷.

16.4.5 被 versus 把

- 把 starts with the doer: **弟弟把蛋糕吃完了。**
- 被 starts with the receiver: **蛋糕被弟弟吃完了。** Same event, different starting point.

弟弟把蛋糕吃完了。

dì di bǎ dàn gāo chī wán le
Word guide: 弟弟 – my younger brother; 蛋糕 – the cake; 吃 – eat; 完 – up.

16.4.6 Recap

- **Receiver + 被 (+ doer) + Verb + result/了** = was done (by …); often unwelcome news.
- 没 goes before 被. 把 starts from the doer, 被 from the receiver.

Practise this pattern step by step.

16.5 ■ Practice without the models

16.5.1 一 … 也 / 都 … 不 / 没 (not even one)

0601.1 Complete: "I didn't buy a single book." 我一本书 …… 没买。

0601.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我一杯水也没喝。
- B. 我没喝一杯水也。
- C. 一杯水我喝也没。
- D. 我一杯水没也喝。

0601.3 Build: "It isn't cold at all today."

Arrange all chunks: 一点儿 / 也不 / 冷。/ 今天

0601.4 我一口也不想吃 means "I don't want to eat a single bite."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0601.5 At the end of the month your wallet is completely empty. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

16.5.2 越 … 越 … (the more …, the more …)

0602.1 Complete: "The more he eats, the fatter he gets." 他越吃 …… 胖。

0602.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 越天热，越人多。
- B. 天热越，人多越。
- C. 天越热，人越多。
- D. 天越热，人越很多。

0602.3 Build: "The more you practise, the better you speak."

Arrange all chunks: 说得 / ， / 你越练习 / 越好。

0602.4 越想越生气 means "the more I think about it, the angrier I get."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0602.5 You are waiting for the rain to stop, but it only gets heavier. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

16.5.3 把 sentences (do something to the object)

0603.1 Complete: "I've finished the homework." 我 …… 作业做完了。

0603.2 Which sentence is complete and correct?

- A. 我把吃饭完了。
- B. 我把饭吃完了。
- C. 我把饭吃。
- D. 我吃把饭完了。

0603.3 Build: "Please take the rubbish out."

Arrange all chunks: 请 / 拿 / 出去。/ 把垃圾

0603.4 我把钥匙没带来 is the correct word order.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0603.5 It is cold, and your little brother has left the door wide open again. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

16.5.4 被 sentences (the passive)

0604.1 Complete: "My wallet was stolen." 我的钱包 …… 偷了。

0604.2 Which says "My phone wasn't taken"?

- A. 我的手机被拿走没。
- B. 我的手机被没拿走。
- C. 没我的手机被拿走。
- D. 我的手机没被拿走。

0604.3 Build: "The cake was eaten up by my little brother."

Arrange all chunks: 吃完 / 了。/ 被弟弟 / 蛋糕

0604.4 弟弟把蛋糕吃完了 and 蛋糕被弟弟吃完了 describe the same event.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0604.5 You come out of the library and your bike is gone. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

16.6 ■ Answers and explanations

16.6.1 一 … 也 / 都 … 不 / 没 (not even one)

0601.1 也

一 + MW + noun + 也/都 + 没 + verb.

0601.2 A. 我一杯水也没喝。

The "one" phrase goes before 也 + 没 + verb.

0601.3 今天一点儿也不冷。

一点儿也不 + adjective.

0601.4 True.

不想 = don't want; the 一 phrase makes it total.

0601.5 One possible response: 我一块钱也没有了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Move the "one" phrase before the verb: 我一本书也没买, not 我没买一本书也.
- Choose 没 for something that did not happen, 不 for a habit, wish or refusal: 一口也不想吃.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

16.6.2 越 … 越 … (the more …, the more …)

0602.1 越

越 A 越 B.

0602.2 C. 天越热，人越多。

天越热，人越多 is right: each 越 comes after its own subject (天, 人) and before a bare adjective. Do not put 越 before the subject, or add 很.

0602.3 你越练习，说得越好。

Subject + 越 + verb, then 越 + result.

0602.4 True.

越 A 越 B links growth in B to A.

0602.5 One possible response: 雨越下越大。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很 after 越: 越来越好 and 越说越快, not 越说越很快.

- Each 越 sits after its own subject: 天越冷，人越少, not 越天冷，越人少.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

16.6.3 把 sentences (do something to the object)

0603.1 把

把 + object + verb + result.

0603.2 B. 我把饭吃完了。

The verb after 把 needs a result or 了.

0603.3 请把垃圾拿出去。

把 + object + verb + direction.

0603.4 False.

没 goes before 把: 我没把钥匙带来.

0603.5 One possible response: 请把门关上。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 我把饭吃 is incomplete. Add a result or 了: 我把饭吃完了.
- The affected object is normally identifiable in the situation. These examples use a known book or door; indefinite objects can also occur with an appropriate context.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

16.6.4 被 sentences (the passive)

0604.1 被

Receiver + 被 + verb + 了.

0604.2 D. 我的手机没被拿走。

没 goes before 被.

0604.3 蛋糕被弟弟吃完了。

Receiver + 被 + doer + verb + result + 了.

0604.4 True.

Both say the brother ate the cake; they start from different points.

0604.5 One possible response: 我的自行车被人偷了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The verb cannot stand alone: 自行车被偷了, not 自行车被偷.
- Put 没 before 被: 我的手机没被偷, not 我的手机被没偷.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17 Basic/Simple Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

17.1 ■ Place + Verb + 着 + Noun (existential)

17.1.1 Describing a room

- You are writing to a friend about your new flat and want to say what is in it.
- **墙上挂着一张地图。** – "There's a map hanging on the wall."

17.1.2 Place + Verb + 着 + (number + MW) + Noun

- **Place + Verb + 着 + Noun** describes what is in a place and how it is there: hanging, lying, standing, sitting.
- The place comes first, with no 在: 桌子上放着一本书.

桌子上放着一本书。
zhuō zi shang fàng zhe yì běn shū
Word guide: 桌子 – table; 上 – on; 放 – lie; 着 – (state); 一本 – a; 书 – book.



17.1.3 People and things

- **门口站着很多人。** – "There are lots of people standing at the door."
- **书上写着他的名字。** – "His name is written on the book."

门口站着很多人。
mén kǒu zhàn zhe hěn duō rén
Word guide: 门口 – the door; 站 – stand; 着 – (state); 很多 – many; 人 – people.

17.1.4 Place first, specific verb

- Do not start with 在: 墙上挂着一张画, not 在墙上挂着一张画.
- The noun is usually new and unspecific (一张, 很多): 桌子上放着一本书, not 桌子上放着那本书.

17.1.5 Versus 有

- **墙上有一张地图** just says a map exists there.
- **墙上挂着一张地图** also shows the way it is there (hanging); it paints the scene.

墙上有一张地图。
qiáng shang yǒu yì zhāng dì tú
Word guide: 墙 – wall; 上 – on; 有 – there is; 一张 – a; 地图 – map.

17.1.6 Recap

- **Place + Verb + 着 + Noun** = there is … (lying / hanging / standing) in a place.
- Place first, no 在; the noun is usually new (一张, 很多). 有 only says it exists.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.2 ■ 想 + QW + 就 + QW (whatever you like)

17.2.1 You choose

- You take a visiting friend to dinner and want her to order anything she likes.
- **你想吃什么就吃什么。** – "Eat whatever you like."

17.2.2 想 + QW + 就 + Verb + same QW

- **(Subject) 想 + Verb + QW, 就 + Verb + same QW** = do whatever / wherever / whenever you want.
- The same question word appears twice, and the same verb usually repeats: 想去哪儿就去哪儿.

你想去哪儿就去哪儿。
nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr jiù qù nǎr
Word guide: 你 – you; 想 – want; 去 – go; 哪儿 – where; 就 – then; 去 – go; 哪儿 – there.



17.2.3 With 什么, 哪儿, 什么时候, 谁

- **你什么时候有空，就什么时候来。** – "Come whenever you're free."
- **谁想去谁去。** – "Whoever wants to go can go."

谁想去谁去。
shéi xiǎng qù shéi qù
Word guide: 谁 – whoever; 想 – wants; 去 – go; 谁 – that person; 去 – goes.

17.2.4 Same word twice

- Use the same question word in both halves: 想吃什么就吃什么, not 想吃什么就吃哪个.
- This is a statement, not a question: no 吗 and no question mark.

17.2.5 Versus 随便

- 随便 = "as you like" on its own: A: 吃什么? B: 随便。
- The QW…QW pattern says exactly what is free to choose: 想买多少就买多少 – "Buy as many as you want."

想买多少就买多少。
xiǎng mǎi duō shao jiù mǎi duō shao
Word guide: 想 – want; 买 – buy; 多少 – how many; 就 – then; 买 – buy; 多少 – that many.

17.2.6 Recap

- **想 + V + QW，就 + V + same QW** = do whatever/wherever/whenever you want.
- Same question word twice; it is a statement, not a question.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.3 ■ Question Word + 都 (every / all)

17.3.1 Everyone likes her

- A new teacher has just started at your school, and every student is talking about her.
- **谁都喜欢她。** – "Everyone likes her."

17.3.2 Question word + 都 / 也

- **QW + 都 + Verb** = every-, any-: 谁都 (everyone), 什么都 (everything), 哪儿都 (everywhere).
- The question word goes before 都 and the verb, not after the verb.

我什么都吃。
wǒ shén me dōu chī
Word guide: 我 – I; 什么 – anything; 都 – all; 吃 – eat.



17.3.3 With 不 / 没: nobody, nothing, nowhere

- **他什么也没说。** – "He didn't say anything."
- **周末我哪儿都不想去。** – "I don't want to go anywhere this weekend."

他什么也没说。
tā shén me yě méi shuō
Word guide: 他 – he; 什么 – anything; 也 – (at all); 没 – not; 说 – say.

17.3.4 Word order

- The QW moves before 都 / 也: 我什么都吃, not 我吃什么都.
- In the negative, 也 and 都 both work: 什么也不想吃 / 什么都不想吃.

17.3.5 With a noun: 哪 + MW + Noun + 都

- **哪个 / 哪种 + noun + 都** = any of them: 哪个菜都好吃 – "Every dish is delicious."
- 什么时候都可以 – "Any time is fine."

哪个菜都好吃。
nǎ ge cài dōu hǎo chī
Word guide: 哪个 – every; 菜 – dish; 都 – all; 好吃 – delicious.

17.3.6 Recap

- **QW + 都 + Verb** = every-/any-: 谁都, 什么都, 哪儿都, 什么时候都.
- **QW + 也/都 + 不/没** = no-one, nothing, nowhere. The QW comes before 都.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.4 ■ 越来越 (more and more)

17.4.1 The city keeps changing

- You go back to your hometown after five years: more cars, more tall buildings, more people.
- **我的家乡越来越漂亮了。** – "My hometown is getting more and more beautiful."

17.4.2 越来越 + Adjective

- **Subject + 越来越 + Adj (+ 了)** = "more and more …": a quality keeps growing over time.
- 了 at the end is common because the sentence reports a change: 天气越来越冷了。

天气越来越冷了。
tiān qì yuè lái yuè lěng le
Word guide: 天气 – the weather; 越来越 – more and more; 冷 – cold.



17.4.3 Feelings and abilities that grow

- Feeling verbs fit too: **我越来越喜欢这个城市了。** – "I like this city more and more."
- So do verbs of ability with an object: 他越来越会做饭了。 – "He is getting better and better at cooking."

我越来越喜欢这个城市了。
wǒ yuè lái yuè xǐ huan zhè ge chéng shì le
Word guide: 我 – I; 越来越 – more and more; 喜欢 – like; 这个 – this; 城市 – city.

17.4.4 One degree word only

- No 很 or 非常 after 越来越: 越来越好, not 越来越很好.
- 越来越 comes after the subject and before the adjective: 他越来越高, not 越来越他高.

17.4.5 越来越 versus 越 … 越 …

- 越来越 has one quality that grows with time.
- 越 A 越 B links two things: the more A, the more B: 雨越下越大 – "The rain is getting heavier and heavier (the longer it rains)."

雨越下越大。
yǔ yuè xià yuè dà
Word guide: 雨 – the rain; 越 – the more; 下 – falls; 越 – the more; 大 – heavy.

17.4.6 Recap

- **越来越 + Adj (+ 了)** = more and more …, a change over time.
- Bare adjective after it, no 很; feeling verbs such as 喜欢 also work.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.5 ■ Question words as "some- / any-"

17.5.1 Do you want anything?

- Your friend is going to the shop and offers to bring something back for you.
- **你要买点儿什么吗?** – "Do you want to buy anything?" Here 什么 means "anything", not "what".

17.5.2 Question word + 吗 = something / anything

- In a **吗 question**, a question word becomes indefinite: 什么 = anything, 谁 = anyone, 哪儿 = anywhere.
- **你去哪儿了吗?** – "Did you go anywhere?" (compare 你去哪儿了? – "Where did you go?")

你想吃什么吗?
nǐ xiǎng chī shén me ma
Word guide: 你 – you; 想 – want; 吃 – eat; 什么 – anything.

什么 in a 吗 question: anything



17.5.3 In negatives and guesses

- **我不想吃什么。** – "I don't really want to eat anything."
- With 好像 or 可能: **他好像有什么事。** – "He seems to have something on his mind."

他好像有什么事。
tā hǎo xiàng yǒu shén me shì
Word guide: 他 – he; 好像 – seems; 有 – have; 什么 – something; 事 – matter.

17.5.4 吗 changes the meaning

- 你买什么? asks "What are you buying?"; 你买什么吗? asks "Are you buying anything?"
- 不 + Verb + 什么 is a mild "not much / nothing in particular", weaker than 什么都不.

17.5.5 Versus QW + 都

- **我什么都不想吃** = "I don't want to eat anything at all" (total).
- **我不想吃什么** = "I don't feel like eating anything in particular" (softer).

我什么都不想吃。
wǒ shén me dōu bù xiǎng chī
Word guide: 我 – I; 什么 – anything; 都 – (at all); 不 – not; 想 – want; 吃 – eat.

17.5.6 Recap

- In 吗 questions, negatives and guesses, a QW = some-/any-: 什么 = anything, 谁 = anyone.
- 不 + V + 什么 is soft; 什么都不 is total.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.6 ■ 为了 (in order to / for the sake of)

17.6.1 Why so early?

- Your roommate gets up at five every morning during the exam season.
- **为了考上好大学，她每天五点起床学习。** – "In order to get into a good university, she gets up at five every day to study."

17.6.2 为了 + goal，action

- **为了 + goal** = "in order to, for the sake of"; it usually starts the sentence, then the action follows.
- The goal can be a verb phrase or a noun: 为了健康, 为了孩子.

为了健康，他每天跑步。
wèi le jiàn kāng tā měi tiān pǎo bù
Word guide: 为了 – for; 健康 – health; 他 – he; 每天 – every day; 跑步 – runs.

为了 + goal: in order to



17.6.3 是为了 to explain a reason

- **我学中文是为了去中国工作。** – "I'm learning Chinese so that I can work in China."
- 是为了 comes after the action and states the purpose.

我学中文是为了去中国工作。
wǒ xué Zhōng wén shì wèi le qù Zhōng guó gōng zuò
Word guide: 我 – I; 学 – learn; 中文 – Chinese; 是 – is; 为了 – in order to; 去 – go to; 中国 – China; 工作 – work.

17.6.4 Purpose, not cause

- 为了 gives a goal; for a cause, use 因为: 因为下雨，我没去, not 为了下雨.
- In careful speech, put 为了 first or use 是为了 after the action: 他每天跑步是为了健康.

17.6.5 为了 versus 因为

- 为了 looks forward to a goal: 为了省钱，我自己做饭 – "To save money, I cook myself."
- 因为 looks back at a cause: 因为没钱，我自己做饭 – "Because I have no money, I cook myself."

因为没钱，我自己做饭。
yīn wèi méi qián wǒ zì jǐ zuò fàn
Word guide: 因为 – because; 没 – have no; 钱 – money; 我 – I; 自己 – myself; 做饭 – cook.

17.6.6 Recap

- **为了 + goal，action** = in order to …; **action + 是为了 + goal** explains the purpose.
- 为了 = a goal ahead; 因为 = a cause behind.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.7 ■ Practice without the models

17.7.1 Place + Verb + 着 + Noun (existential)

0605.1 Complete: “There’s a cat lying on the bed.” 床上躺 …… 一只猫。

0605.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 墙上挂着一张画。
- B. 墙上挂一张画着。
- C. 一张画挂着墙上。
- D. 在墙上挂着一张画。

0605.3 Build: “There are lots of people standing at the door.”

Arrange all chunks: 很多 / 站着 / 门口 / 人。

0605.4 墙上挂着一张地图 says how the map is there, not only that it exists.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0605.5 You are writing to a friend about your new flat and want to say what is in it. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.7.2 想 + QW + 就 + QW (whatever you like)

0606.1 Complete: “Buy whatever you want.” 你想买什么就买 ……。

0606.2 Which says “Sit wherever you like.”?

- A. 你哪儿想坐就坐。
- B. 你想坐哪儿就坐什么。
- C. 你想坐哪儿就坐哪儿吗?
- D. 你想坐哪儿就坐哪儿。

0606.3 Build: “Whoever wants to go can go.”

Arrange all chunks: 谁 / 去。/ 谁 / 想去

0606.4 想买多少就买多少 means “buy as many as you want”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0606.5 You take a visiting friend to dinner and want her to order anything she likes. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one

detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.7.3 Question Word + 都 (every / all)

0607.1 Complete: “Everyone knows him.” 谁 …… 认识他。

0607.2 Which says “I don’t want to eat anything.”?

- A. 什么我不想都吃。
- B. 我不想吃什么都。
- C. 我都什么不想吃。
- D. 我什么都不想吃。

0607.3 Build: “He didn’t say anything.”

Arrange all chunks: 说。 / 什么 / 也没 / 他

0607.4 哪个菜都好吃 means “every dish is delicious”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0607.5 A new teacher has just started at your school, and every student is talking about her. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.7.4 越来越 (more and more)

0110.1 Complete: “Your Chinese is getting better and better.” 你的中文 …… 好了。

0110.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 东西很越来越贵了。
- B. 东西越来越贵了。
- C. 越来越东西贵了。
- D. 东西越来越很贵了。

0110.3 Build: “I like this city more and more.”

Arrange all chunks: 这个城市了。 / 越来越 / 我 / 喜欢

0110.4 越来越 links two different things, as in “the more you practise, the better you get.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0110.5 You go back to your hometown after five years: more cars, more tall buildings, more people. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.7.5 Question words as “some- / any-”

0608.1 What does 你周末去哪儿了吗? mean?

- A. Did you go anywhere at the weekend?
- B. You went everywhere at the weekend.
- C. Why didn’t you go out at the weekend?
- D. Where did you go at the weekend?

0608.2 Complete: “Did anyone call me?” 有 …… 给我打电话吗?

0608.3 Build: “Do you want to eat anything?”

Arrange all chunks: 什么 / 想吃 / 你 / 吗?

0608.4 我不想吃什么 is stronger than 我什么都不想吃.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0608.5 Your friend is going to the shop and offers to bring something back for you. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.7.6 为了 (in order to / for the sake of)

0609.1 Complete: “To save money, I cook myself.” …… 省钱，我自己做饭。

0609.2 Which word fits? “Because it rained, the match was cancelled.” _____ 下雨，比赛取消了。

- A. 所以
- B. 是为了
- C. 因为
- D. 为了

0609.3 Build: “I’m learning Chinese so that I can work in China.”

Arrange all chunks: 工作。 / 去中国 / 我学中文 / 是为了

0609.4 为了 looks forward to a goal, 因为 looks back at a cause.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0609.5 Your roommate gets up at five every morning during the exam season. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.8 ■ Answers and explanations

17.8.1 Place + Verb + 着 + Noun (existential)

0605.1 着

Place + Verb + 着 + noun.

0605.2 A. 墙上挂着一张画。

The place starts the sentence, without 在.

0605.3 门口站着很多人。

Place + Verb + 着 + noun.

0605.4 True.

挂着 shows it is hanging; 有 would only say it exists.

0605.5 One possible response: 墙上挂着一张地图。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not start with 在: 墙上挂着一张画, not 在墙上挂着一张画.
- The noun is usually new and unspecific (一张, 很多): 桌子上放着一本书, not 桌子上放着那本书.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17.8.2 想 + QW + 就 + QW (whatever you like)

0606.1 什么

The same question word repeats.

0606.2 D. 你想坐哪儿就坐哪儿。

想 + V + 哪儿，就 + V + 哪儿, as a statement.

0606.3 谁想去谁去。

QW + 想 + V, QW + V.

0606.4 True.

多少 repeats: as much/many as you want.

0606.5 One possible response: 你想吃什么就吃什么。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use the same question word in both halves: 想吃什么就吃什么, not 想吃什么就吃哪个.

- This is a statement, not a question: no 吗 and no question mark.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17.8.3 Question Word + 都 (every / all)

0607.1 都

QW + 都 + verb = every-.

0607.2 D. 我什么都不想吃。

QW + 都 + 不 + verb.

0607.3 他什么也没说。

Subject + QW + 也 + 没 + verb.

0607.4 True.

哪个 + noun + 都 = any/every one of them.

0607.5 One possible response: 谁都喜欢她。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The QW moves before 都 / 也: 我什么都吃, not 我吃什么都.
- In the negative, 也 and 都 both work: 什么也不想吃 / 什么都不想吃.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17.8.4 越来越 (more and more)

0110.1 越来越

越来越 + Adj + 了 reports a growing change.

0110.2 B. 东西越来越贵了。

东西越来越贵了 is right: 越来越 goes after the subject and takes a bare adjective. Adding 很 (越来越很贵, 很越来越贵) is wrong, and 越来越 cannot come before the subject.

0110.3 我越来越喜欢这个城市了。

Subject + 越来越 + feeling verb + object + 了.

0110.4 False.

That is 越 A 越 B. 越来越 has one quality that grows over time.

0110.5 One possible response: 我的家乡越来越漂亮了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很 or 非常 after 越来越: 越来越好, not 越来越很好.
- 越来越 comes after the subject and before the adjective: 他越来越高, not 越来越他高.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17.8.5 Question words as "some- / any-"

0608.1 A. Did you go anywhere at the weekend?

With 吗, 哪儿 becomes "anywhere".

0608.2 谁

In a 吗 question, 谁 = anyone (有人 also works).

0608.3 你想吃什么吗?

QW + 吗 = anything?

0608.4 False.

什么都不 is the total negative; 不 … 什么 is softer.

0608.5 One possible response: 你要买点儿什么吗?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 你买什么? asks "What are you buying?"; 你买什么吗? asks "Are you buying anything?"
- 不 + Verb + 什么 is a mild "not much / nothing in particular", weaker than 什么都不.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17.8.6 为了 (in order to / for the sake of)

0609.1 为了

为了 + goal, then the action.

0609.2 C. 因为

Rain is a cause, not a goal, so 因为.

0609.3 我学中文是为了去中国工作。

Action + 是为了 + goal.

0609.4 True.

That is the key difference.

0609.5 One possible response: 为了考上好大学，她每天五点起床学习。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 为了 gives a goal; for a cause, use 因为: 因为下雨，我没去, not 为了下雨.
- In careful speech, put 为了 first or use 是为了 after the action: 他每天跑步是为了健康.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

18 Comparison Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

18.1 ■ 跟 … 比 (起来) (compared with …)

18.1.1 Your city or mine?

- A friend from Shanghai is visiting your small town and finds everything slower and quieter.
- **跟上海比，这儿安静多了。** – "Compared with Shanghai, it's much quieter here."

18.1.2 跟 + B + 比 (起来)，A …

- **跟 B 比 (起来)** = "compared with B" sets up the comparison first; the comment on A follows.
- It often starts the sentence, separated by a comma: 跟去年比，今年的夏天热多了.

跟去年比，今年热多了。
gēn qù nián bǐ jīn nián rè duō le
Word guide: 跟 – with; 去年 – last year; 比 – compared; 今年 – this year; 热 – hot; 多 – much.



18.1.3 After the subject

- The phrase can follow the subject: **我跟我哥哥比起来，还是比较矮。** – "Compared with my brother, I'm still rather short."
- 和 can replace 跟: 和北京比，广州暖和得多。

和北京比，广州暖和得多。
hé Běi jīng bǐ Guǎng zhōu nuǎn huo de duō
Word guide: 和 – with; 北京 – Beijing; 比 – compared; 广州 – Guangzhou; 暖和 – warm; 得多 – much more.

18.1.4 Do not add 比 twice

- After 跟 B 比, the comment uses a plain adjective (+ 多了 / 一点): 安静多了, not 比安静多了.
- Keep 跟 before B: 跟上海比, not 比跟上海.

18.1.5 跟 … 比 versus A 比 B

- A 比 B + Adj is one tight sentence: 这儿比上海安静.
- 跟 B 比， A … sets the scene first, which suits longer descriptions and opinions.

这儿比上海安静。
zhèr bǐ Shàng hǎi ān jìng
Word guide: 这儿 – here; 比 – than; 上海 – Shanghai; 安静 – quiet.

18.1.6 Recap

- **跟 / 和 B 比 (起来)，A + Adj** = compared with B, A is …
- No second 比 in the comment; 多了 or 一点 often follow the adjective.

Practise this pattern step by step.

18.2 ■ 比 … 更 / 还 (even more than)

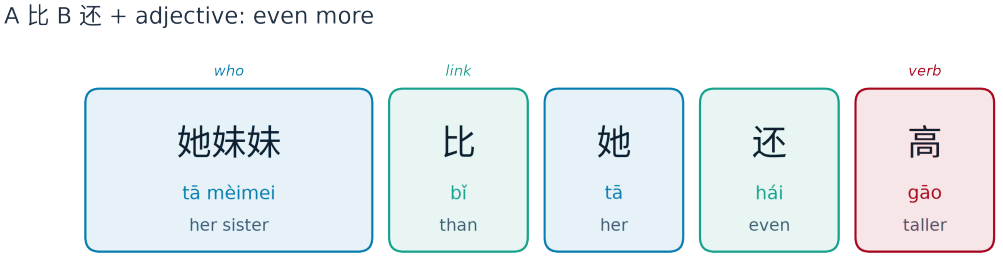
18.2.1 Already tall, and even taller

- Your friend is already tall, but her younger sister, only fourteen, is taller still.
- **她很高，她妹妹比她还高。** – “She’s tall, and her younger sister is even taller.”

18.2.2 A 比 B + 更 / 还 + Adjective

- **更** or **还** before the adjective = “even more”: B is already Adj, and A goes beyond it.
- 比 comes first, then 更 or 还, then the bare adjective: 比他更忙, 比昨天还冷.

今天比昨天更冷。
jīn tiān bǐ zuó tiān gèng lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 比 – than; 昨天 – yesterday; 更 – even more; 冷 – cold.



18.2.3 还 adds surprise

- 更 is neutral and common in writing: 这个方法更好。
- 还 sounds more surprised or emphatic in speech: **这个菜比那个还辣！** – "This dish is even spicier than that one!"

这个菜比那个还辣！
zhè ge cài bǐ nà ge hái là
Word guide: 这个 – this; 菜 – dish; 比 – than; 那个 – that one; 还 – even; 辣 – spicy.

18.2.4 很 does not belong in 比 sentences

- Use 更 or 还 for "even more", never 很 or 非常: 比他更高, not 比他很高.
- 更 / 还 go after the 比 phrase, before the adjective: 比我更忙, not 更比我忙.

18.2.5 更 without 比

- 更 also works alone when the comparison is clear: **我喜欢茶，但我更喜欢咖啡。** – "I like tea, but I like coffee even more."
- 还 in this sense needs the 比 comparison.

我更喜欢咖啡。
wǒ gèng xǐ huan kā fēi
Word guide: 我 – I; 更 – even more; 喜欢 – like; 咖啡 – coffee.

18.2.6 Recap

- **A 比 B 更 / 还 + Adj** = A is even more Adj than B (B is already Adj).
- 还 sounds more emphatic; 更 also works without 比. Never 很 or 非常 before the adjective in a 比 sentence (他比我很高 ×); 很多 or 一点儿 after it is fine: 他比我高很多.

Practise this pattern step by step.

18.3 ■ 比 … Adj + 多了 (much more than)

18.3.1 Plane or train?

- You are choosing how to get from Beijing to Guangzhou. The train takes eight hours, the plane three.
- **坐飞机比坐火车快多了。** – "Flying is much faster than taking the train."

18.3.2 A 比 B + Adj + 多了 / 得多

- **Adj + 多了** or **Adj + 得多** after a 比 comparison = "much more …".
- The degree comes after the adjective, never before it.

这件比那件贵得多。
zhè jiàn bǐ nà jiàn guì de duō
Word guide: 这 – this; 件 – (measure word); 比 – than; 那 – that; 件 – one; 贵 – expensive; 得多 – much more.

比 + adjective + 多了 / 一点: by how much



18.3.3 A little, or by how much

- **一点 / 一些** for "a little more": 今天比昨天热一点。– "Today is a bit hotter than yesterday."
- An exact amount also goes after the adjective: **他比我大三岁。** – "He's three years older than me."

他比我大三岁。
tā bǐ wǒ dà sān suì
Word guide: 他 – he; 比 – than; 我 – me; 大 – older; 三岁 – three years.

18.3.4 The amount comes last

- Say 快多了, not 多快了 or 很快多了: the degree follows the adjective.
- Put an exact difference after the adjective: 大三岁, not 三岁大 in a 比 sentence.

18.3.5 多了 versus 得多

- Both mean "much more"; 多了 is a little more spoken, 得多 a little more neutral.
- 多了 also works without 比 for a change: 我的病好多了 – "I'm much better now."

我的病好多了。
wǒ de bìng hǎo duō le
Word guide: 我 – my; 病 – illness; 好 – better; 多 – much.

18.3.6 Recap

- **A 比 B + Adj + 多了 / 得多** = much more; **+ 一点** = a little more; **+ amount** = by that much.
- Every degree word or amount comes after the adjective.

Practise this pattern step by step.

18.4 ■ N1 + 有 + N2 + Adj (as ... as)

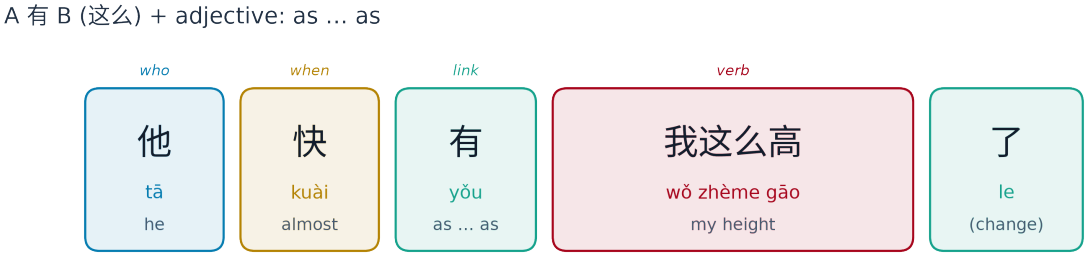
18.4.1 Growing up fast

- Your nephew was tiny last year; now he reaches your shoulder.
- **他快有我这么高了！** – "He's almost as tall as me!"

18.4.2 A + 有 + B + (这么 / 那么) + Adjective

- **A 有 B (那么) + Adj** = "A is as Adj as B": A reaches B's level.
- It is often used in questions and with 快 or 已经: 他有你高吗? – "Is he as tall as you?"

他有你高吗?
tā yǒu nǐ gāo ma
Word guide: 他 – he; 有 – is as … as; 你 – you; 高 – tall.



18.4.3 Reaching a level

- **这个西瓜有篮球那么大。** – "This watermelon is as big as a basketball."
- With 已经: **我的中文已经有他那么好了。** – "My Chinese is already as good as his."

这个西瓜有篮球那么大。
zhè ge xī guā yǒu lán qiú nà me dà
Word guide: 这个 – this; 西瓜 – watermelon; 有 – is as … as; 篮球 – a basketball; 那么 – so; 大 – big.

18.4.4 Bare adjective, and 没有 for "not as"

- No 很: 有他那么高, not 有他很高.
- The negative is 没有, which you know already: 他没有我高 – "He isn't as tall as me."

18.4.5 有 … 那么 versus 跟 … 一样

- 跟 B 一样 + Adj says the two are equal: 他跟我一样高.
- 有 B 那么 + Adj says A reaches B's level, often as a question or a surprise: 他有我这么高吗?

他跟我一样高。
tā gēn wǒ yí yàng gāo
Word guide: 他 – he; 跟 – and; 我 – I; 一样 – equally; 高 – tall.

18.4.6 Recap

- **A 有 B (这么/那么) + Adj** = A is as Adj as B, A reaches B's level.
- Common in questions and with 快 / 已经; negative 没有.

Practise this pattern step by step.

18.5 ■ Practice without the models

18.5.1 跟 … 比 (起来) (compared with …)

0402.1 Complete: "Compared with last month, I'm much busier." …… 上个月比，我忙多了。

0402.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 跟北京比，上海热一点。
- B. 比跟北京，上海热一点。
- C. 跟北京比，上海比热一点。
- D. 跟北京，上海比热一点。

0402.3 Build: "Compared with Beijing, Guangzhou is much warmer."

Arrange all chunks: 暖和得多。/ ， / 广州 / 和北京比

0402.4 跟上海比，这儿安静多了 and 这儿比上海安静多了 compare the same two places.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0402.5 A friend from Shanghai is visiting your small town and finds everything slower and quieter. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

18.5.2 比 … 更 / 还 (even more than)

0403.1 Complete: "This one is even cheaper than that one." 这个比那个 …… 便宜。

0403.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他比我非常聪明。
- B. 他比我很聪明。
- C. 他比我更聪明。
- D. 他更比我聪明。

0403.3 Build: "I like tea, but I like coffee even more."

Arrange all chunks: ， 但我 / 我喜欢茶 / 更喜欢 / 咖啡。

0403.4 她妹妹比她还高 implies that she is already quite tall.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0403.5 Your friend is already tall, but her younger sister, only fourteen, is taller still.

Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

18.5.3 比 … Adj + 多了 (much more than)

0404.1 Complete: "This room is much bigger than that one." 这个房间比那个大……。

0404.2 Which says "My sister is two years younger than me."?

- A. 妹妹两岁比我小。
- B. 妹妹比我小两岁。
- C. 妹妹比我两岁小。
- D. 妹妹比我很小两岁。

0404.3 Build: "Today is a bit hotter than yesterday."

Arrange all chunks: 比昨天 / 今天 / 热 / 一点。

0404.4 我的病好多了 needs 比 to be correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0404.5 You are choosing how to get from Beijing to Guangzhou. The train takes eight hours, the plane three. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

18.5.4 N1 + 有 + N2 + Adj (as … as)

0405.1 Ask: "Is your hometown as cold as Harbin?" 你的家乡 …… 哈尔滨那么冷吗?

0405.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他这么有我高。
- B. 他有高我这么。
- C. 他有我很高。
- D. 他有我这么高。

0405.3 Build: "This watermelon is as big as a basketball."

Arrange all chunks: 那么大。/ 这个西瓜 / 有 / 篮球

0405.4 The negative of 他有我高 is 他没有我高.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0405.5 Your nephew was tiny last year; now he reaches your shoulder. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

18.6 ■ Answers and explanations

18.6.1 跟 … 比 (起来) (compared with …)

0402.1 跟

跟 / 和 + B + 比 sets up the comparison.

0402.2 A. 跟北京比，上海热一点。

After 跟 B 比, the comment is a plain adjective, with no second 比.

0402.3 和北京比，广州暖和得多。

和 B 比, then A + Adj + 得多.

0402.4 True.

Both say this place is much quieter than Shanghai.

0402.5 One possible response: 跟上海比，这儿安静多了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- After 跟 B 比, the comment uses a plain adjective (+ 多了 / 一点): 安静多了, not 比安静多了.
- Keep 跟 before B: 跟上海比, not 比跟上海.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

18.6.2 比 … 更 / 还 (even more than)

0403.1 更

比 B + 更 / 还 + Adj.

0403.2 C. 他比我更聪明。

更 follows the 比 phrase; 很 and 非常 do not go in a 比 sentence.

0403.3 我喜欢茶，但我更喜欢咖啡。

更 can work without 比 when the comparison is clear.

0403.4 True.

还 / 更 = even more, so the person compared with is already tall.

0403.5 One possible response: 她很高，她妹妹比她还高。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 更 or 还 for "even more", never 很 or 非常: 比他更高, not 比他很高.
- 更 / 还 go after the 比 phrase, before the adjective: 比我更忙, not 更比我忙.

- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

18.6.3 比 … Adj + 多了 (much more than)

0404.1 多了

Adj + 多了 / 得多 = much more.

0404.2 B. 妹妹比我小两岁。

The exact difference follows the adjective.

0404.3 今天比昨天热一点。

A 比 B + Adj + 一点.

0404.4 False.

多了 can describe a change on its own: "much better now".

0404.5 One possible response: 坐飞机比坐火车快多了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Say 快多了, not 多快了 or 很快多了: the degree follows the adjective.
- Put an exact difference after the adjective: 大三岁, not 三岁大 in a 比 sentence.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

18.6.4 N1 + 有 + N2 + Adj (as … as)

0405.1 有

A 有 B 那么 + Adj asks whether A reaches B's level.

0405.2 D. 他有我这么高。

他有我这么高 is right: A 有 B (这么) + bare adjective, "as tall as me". 很 is not used in a comparison, and 这么 comes before the adjective.

0405.3 这个西瓜有篮球那么大。

A + 有 + B + 那么 + Adj.

0405.4 True.

没有 is the negative of the 有 comparison.

0405.5 One possible response: 他快有我这么高了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.

- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 很: 有他那么高, not 有他很高.
- The negative is 没有, which you know already: 他没有我高 – “He isn’t as tall as me.”
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19 Complex Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

19.1 ■ 除了 ... 都 / 还 (except / besides)

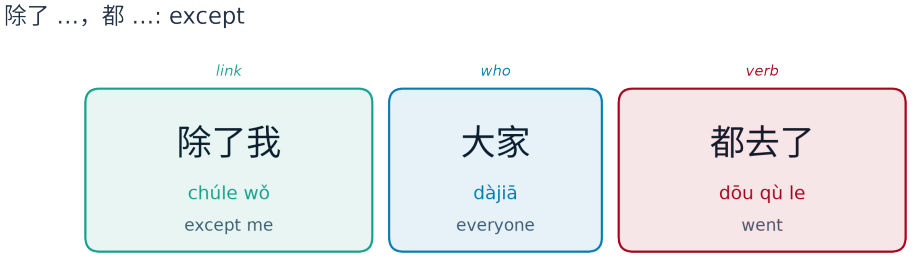
19.1.1 Everyone except me

- Your whole class went to the concert, but you were ill at home.
- **除了我，大家都去了。** – "Everyone went except me."

19.1.2 除了 A (以外)，都 ... = except A

- **除了 A，(B) 都 ...** = "except for A, all …": A is left out of the group.
- 以外 can follow A: 除了我以外. The 都 is needed in this meaning.

除了星期天，我每天都上班。
chú le xīng qī tiān wǒ měi tiān dōu shàng bān
Word guide: 除了 – except; 星期天 – Sunday; 我 – I; 每天 – every day; 都 – all; 上班 – work.



19.1.3 除了 A，还 / 也 ... = besides A

- **除了 A，还 B** = "besides A, also B": A is included and more is added.
- **除了中文，他还会说日语。** – "Besides Chinese, he can also speak Japanese."

除了中文，他还会说日语。
chú le Zhōng wén tā hái huì shuō Rì yǔ
Word guide: 除了 – besides; 中文 – Chinese; 他 – he; 还 – also; 会 – can; 说 – speak; 日语 – Japanese.

19.1.4 都 excludes, 还 adds

- 除了我，大家都去了 = I did not go. 除了我，小李也去了 = Xiao Li went as well as me.
- Put 都 / 还 / 也 after the subject of the second clause: 大家都去了, not 都大家去了.

19.1.5 With a verb phrase

- 除了 can take an action: **周末除了看书，我还喜欢跑步。** – "At weekends, besides reading, I also like running."
- **他除了吃就是睡。** – "All he does is eat and sleep." (except eating, it is sleeping)

他除了吃就是睡。
tā chú le chī jiù shì shuì
Word guide: 他 – he; 除了 – apart from; 吃 – eating; 就是 – it's just; 睡 – sleeping.

19.1.6 Recap

- **除了 A (以外)，都 ...** = except A (A is left out).
- **除了 A (以外)，还 / 也 ...** = besides A (A plus more).

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.2 ■ 如果 ... 的话 (if ...)

19.2.1 A trip that depends on the weather

- You are planning a trip to the Great Wall but the forecast is uncertain.
- **如果明天下雨的话，我们就在家看电影。** – "If it rains tomorrow, we'll stay home and watch a film."

19.2.2 如果 + condition + 的话

- **如果 ... 的话** = "if ...". 的话 closes the condition; either word may be dropped in speech.
- 如果下雨, 下雨的话, 如果下雨的话 all mean "if it rains".

下雨的话，我就不去了。
xià yǔ de huà wǒ jiù bú qù le
Word guide: 下雨 – rain; 的话 – if; 我 – I; 就 – then; 不 – not; 去 – go.



19.2.3 Offers and advice

- **你有问题的话，可以问我。** – "If you have any questions, you can ask me."
- **如果你累了的话，就休息一下。** – "If you're tired, have a rest."

你有问题的话，可以问我。
nǐ yǒu wèn tí de huà kě yǐ wèn wǒ
Word guide: 你 – you; 有 – have; 问题 – questions; 的话 – if; 可以 – can; 问 – ask; 我

– me.

19.2.4 The condition comes first

- Put the 如果 clause before the result: 如果你有时间，来找我, not 来找我如果你有时间 (English order).
- 的话 goes at the end of the condition, not after the result.

19.2.5 要是 in speech

- **要是** is a spoken "if": 要是你不想去的话，就别去了。
- It works with 的话 and 就 exactly like 如果.

要是你不想去，就别去了。
yào shi nǐ bù xiǎng qù jiù bié qù le
Word guide: 要是 – if; 你 – you; 不 – don't; 想 – want to; 去 – go; 就 – then; 别 – don't; 去 – go.

19.2.6 Recap

- **如果 / 要是 … (的话), (就) …** = if …, then …; either 如果 or 的话 may be dropped.
- The condition comes first, 的话 closes it.

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.3 ■ 如果 … ，就 … (if …, then …)

19.3.1 If the tickets are cheap

- You and a friend are checking flights for the holiday.
- **如果机票便宜，我们就去海南。** – "If the plane tickets are cheap, we'll go to Hainan."

19.3.2 如果 A，(Subject) 就 B

- **如果 A，就 B** = "if A, then B". 就 links the result to the condition.
- 就 goes after the subject of the result clause: 如果你来，我就会很高兴.

如果你来，我就会很高兴。
rú guǒ nǐ lái wǒ jiù huì hěn gāo xìng
Word guide: 如果 – if; 你 – you; 来 – come; 我 – I; 就 – then; 会 – will; 很 – very; 高兴 – happy.



19.3.3 Plans, warnings, advice

- Warning: **如果你不快点儿，就会迟到。** – "If you don't hurry, you'll be late."
- Advice: **如果你不舒服，就去看医生吧。** – "If you're not well, go and see a doctor."

如果你不快点儿，就会迟到。
rú guǒ nǐ bú kuài diǎnr jiù huì chí dào
Word guide: 如果 – if; 你 – you; 不 – don't; 快 – hurry; 点儿 – a bit; 就 – then; 会 – will; 迟到 – be late.

19.3.4 就 after the subject

- Subject first, then 就: 我就去, not 就我去.
- Do not use 所以 for "then" after 如果: 如果下雨，我就不去, not 如果下雨，所以我不去.

19.3.5 如果 versus 因为

- 如果 is a possibility that may or may not happen: 如果下雨，我就不去.
- 因为 is a fact that already holds: 因为下雨，所以我没去.

因为下雨，所以我没去。
yīn wèi xià yǔ suǒ yǐ wǒ méi qù
Word guide: 因为 – because; 下雨 – it rained; 所以 – so; 我 – I; 没 – didn't; 去 – go.

19.3.6 Recap

- **如果 A，Subject + 就 + B** = if A, then B.
- 就 follows the subject; 如果 pairs with 就, 因为 with 所以.

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.4 ■ 不但 ... ，而且 ... (not only ... but also)

19.4.1 Not only cheap

- You are recommending a new restaurant to a friend who is hard to please.
- **这家饭馆不但便宜，而且很好吃。** – "This restaurant isn't only cheap, it's also delicious."

19.4.2 不但 A，而且 B

- **不但 A，而且 B** = "not only A, but also B": B adds a further, often stronger, point.
- 而且 can be followed by 还 or 也: 而且还很好吃.

她不但会唱歌，而且会跳舞。
tā bú dàn huì chàng gē ér qiě huì tiào wǔ
Word guide: 她 – she; 不但 – not only; 会 – can; 唱歌 – sing; 而且 – but also; 会 – can; 跳舞 – dance.

不但 …，而且 …: not only …, but also …



19.4.3 One subject or two

- Same subject: subject first, then 不但: **他不但聪明，而且很努力。** – "He's not only clever but also hard-working."
- Different subjects: 不但 before the first subject: **不但我喜欢，而且我朋友也喜欢。** – "Not only do I like it, my friend does too."

不但我喜欢，而且我朋友也喜欢。
bú dàn wǒ xǐ huan ér qiě wǒ péng you yě xǐ huan
Word guide: 不但 – not only; 我 – I; 喜欢 – like it; 而且 – but also; 我 – my; 朋友 – friend; 也 – too; 喜欢 – likes it.

19.4.4 Where 不但 goes

- One subject: 他不但聪明, not 不但他聪明.
- Two subjects: 不但我喜欢，而且他也喜欢 – 不但 goes before the first subject.

19.4.5 而且 alone, and 不仅

- 而且 can stand alone to add a point: 天气很冷，而且下雪了 – "It's cold, and it's snowing too."
- 不仅 is a more written synonym of 不但: 不仅 … 而且 ….

天气很冷，而且下雪了。
tiān qì hěn lěng ér qiě xià xuě le
Word guide: 天气 – the weather; 很 – very; 冷 – cold; 而且 – and also; 下雪 – snow.

19.4.6 Recap

- **不但 A，而且 B** = not only A, but also B.
- One subject: after it; two subjects: before the first. 而且 can stand alone; 不仅 is more formal.

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.5 ■ Practice without the models

19.5.1 除了 ... 都 / 还 (except / besides)

0711.1 Complete: "Besides tea, I also drink coffee." 除了茶，我 …… 喝咖啡。

0711.2 In 除了小王，我们都喜欢吃辣的, does Xiao Wang like spicy food?

- A. Yes, and so do the others.
- B. Yes, he likes it most.
- C. The sentence does not say.
- D. No, he is the exception.

0711.3 Build: "I work every day except Sunday."

Arrange all chunks: 除了星期天 / 我每天 / 都上班。/ ，

0711.4 除了中文，他还会说日语 means he speaks both Chinese and Japanese.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0711.5 Your whole class went to the concert, but you were ill at home. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.5.2 如果 ... 的话 (if ...)

0712.1 Complete: "If you have time, come to my place." 你有时间 ……，来我家吧。

0712.2 Which sentence has natural Chinese word order?

- A. 我们去公园，如果明天天气好的话。
- B. 如果明天天气好的话，我们去公园。
- C. 的话明天天气好，我们去公园。
- D. 我们如果去公园的话，明天天气好。

0712.3 Build: "If you have any questions, you can ask me."

Arrange all chunks: 的话 / 问我。/ 你有问题 / ， 可以

0712.4 要是 is a spoken word for "if".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0712.5 You are planning a trip to the Great Wall but the forecast is uncertain. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.5.3 如果 ... ，就 ... (if ..., then ...)

0713.1 Complete: "If you come, I'll cook for you." 如果你来，我 …… 给你做饭。

0713.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 下雨如果，我就不去。
- B. 如果下雨，就我不去。
- C. 如果下雨，我就不去。
- D. 如果下雨，所以我不去。

0713.3 Build: “If you’re not well, go and see a doctor.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 看医生吧。/ 如果你不舒服 / 就去

0713.4 因为下雨 describes a possibility; 如果下雨 describes a fact.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0713.5 You and a friend are checking flights for the holiday. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.5.4 不但 … ，而且 … (not only … but also)

0714.1 Complete: “He not only speaks Chinese, but also speaks French.” 他不但会说中文，…… 会说法语。

0714.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他不但很高，很帅而且。
- B. 他很高不但，而且很帅。
- C. 不但他很高，而且很帅。
- D. 他不但很高，而且很帅。

0714.3 Build: “Not only do I like it, my friend does too.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 而且我朋友 / 也喜欢。/ 不但我喜欢

0714.4 而且 can be used on its own to add a point.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0714.5 You are recommending a new restaurant to a friend who is hard to please. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.6 ■ Answers and explanations

19.6.1 除了 … 都 / 还 (except / besides)

0711.1 还

除了 … 还 … adds to A.

0711.2 D. No, he is the exception.

除了 … 都 … leaves Xiao Wang out of the group.

0711.3 除了星期天，我每天都上班。

除了 A，subject + 都 + verb.

0711.4 True.

还 adds to what 除了 introduced.

0711.5 One possible response: 除了我，大家都去了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 除了我，大家都去了 = I did not go. 除了我，小李也去了 = Xiao Li went as well as me.
- Put 都 / 还 / 也 after the subject of the second clause: 大家都去了, not 都大家去了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19.6.2 如果 … 的话 (if …)

0712.1 的话

的话 closes the condition.

0712.2 B. 如果明天天气好的话，我们去公园。

The condition comes first.

0712.3 你有问题的话，可以问我。

Condition + 的话, then the result.

0712.4 True.

要是 …(的话) works like 如果.

0712.5 One possible response: 如果明天下雨的话，我们就在家看电影。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- Put the 如果 clause before the result: 如果你有时间，来找我, not 来找我如果你有时间 (English order).
- 的话 goes at the end of the condition, not after the result.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19.6.3 如果 … ，就 … (if …, then …)

0713.1 就

如果 …，subject + 就 ….

0713.2 C. 如果下雨，我就不去。

如果 pairs with 就, placed after the subject.

0713.3 如果你不舒服，就去看医生吧。

如果 + condition, 就 + advice.

0713.4 False.

It is the other way round: 因为 = a fact, 如果 = a possibility.

0713.5 One possible response: 如果机票便宜，我们就去海南。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Subject first, then 就: 我就去, not 就我去.
- Do not use 所以 for "then" after 如果: 如果下雨，我就不去, not 如果下雨，所以我不去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19.6.4 不但 … ，而且 … (not only … but also)

0714.1 而且

不但 A，而且 B.

0714.2 D. 他不但很高，而且很帅。

With one subject, 不但 follows the subject.

0714.3 不但我喜欢，而且我朋友也喜欢。

Two subjects: 不但 before the first.

0714.4 True.

天气很冷，而且下雪了.

0714.5 One possible response: 这家饭馆不但便宜，而且很好吃。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- One subject: 他不但聪明, not 不但他聪明.
- Two subjects: 不但我喜欢，而且他也喜欢 – 不但 goes before the first subject.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20 Comparing similar adverbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

20.1 ■ 才 vs 就 (late vs early)

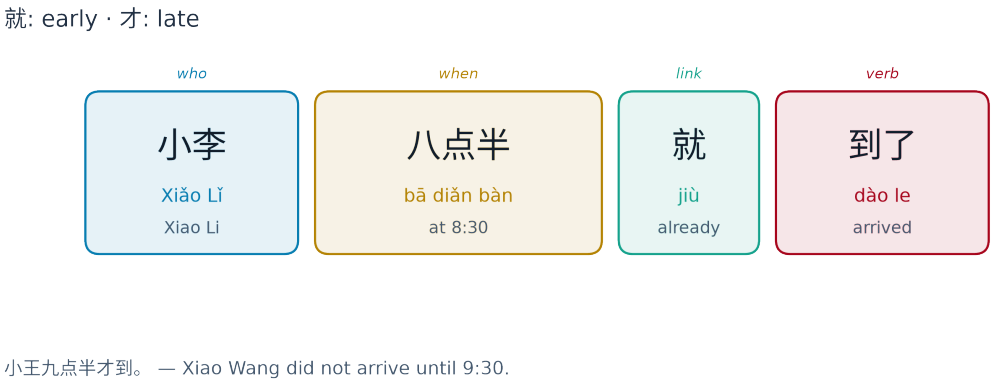
20.1.1 Same time, different reactions

- The meeting starts at nine. Li arrived at 8:30; Wang strolled in at 9:30.
- **小李八点半就到了，小王九点半才到。** – "Li was there as early as 8:30; Wang didn't arrive until 9:30."

20.1.2 Time + 就 + Verb + 了 versus Time + 才 + Verb

- **就** = earlier, sooner or easier than expected; the sentence usually has 了: 他六点就起床了.
- **才** = later or harder than expected: 他九点才起床 is the short model used here. Other contexts can also include 了.

他六点就起床了。
tā liù diǎn jiù qǐ chuáng le
Word guide: 他 – he; 六点 – six o'clock; 就 – already; 起床 – get up.



20.1.3 It depends on the expectation

- A child getting up at seven for school: **他七点就起床了** if you expected eight.
- The same seven o'clock for a farmer who usually rises at five: **他七点才起床。**

他九点才起床。
tā jiǔ diǎn cái qǐ chuáng
Word guide: 他 – he; 九点 – nine o'clock; 才 – not until; 起床 – get up.

20.1.4 The 了 rule

- 就 sentences about the past normally take 了: 他八点就到了.
- Use 他十点才到 as the simple late-arrival model. This is not a ban on 了 in every sentence containing 才.

20.1.5 With amounts and effort too

- 就 = little effort needed: **他看了一遍就懂了。** – "He understood after reading it once."
- 才 = a lot of effort needed: **我看了三遍才懂。** – "I only understood after reading it three times."

我看了三遍才懂。
wǒ kàn le sān biàn cái dǒng
Word guide: 我 – I; 看 – read; 三遍 – three times; 才 – only then; 懂 – understand.

20.1.6 Recap

- **就** can present an event as early, quick or easy; **才** as late, slow or hard. Aspect marking depends on the complete sentence.
- The choice depends on the speaker's expectation, not on the clock alone.

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.2 ■ 刚 vs 刚才 (just now: adverb vs time-word)

20.2.1 You only just missed her

- You knock on your friend's door; her roommate says she left a few minutes ago.
- **她刚才出去了。** – "She went out a moment ago." 刚才 is a time word for "just now".

20.2.2 刚 is an adverb, 刚才 is a time word

- **刚 + Verb** = "have just (done)"; it goes right before the verb: 我刚到 – "I've just arrived."
- **刚才** = "a moment ago"; like 昨天, it can start the sentence: 刚才你去哪儿了?

我刚到家。
wǒ gāng dào jiā
Word guide: 我 – I; 刚 – just; 到 – arrive; 家 – home.



20.2.3 How recent is “just”?

- 刚 can stretch: **他刚来北京一个月。** – “He’s only been in Beijing a month.” It is recent from the speaker’s view.
- 刚才 is only a few minutes ago: 刚才有人给你打电话。– “Someone called you just now.”

刚才有人给你打电话。
gāng cái yǒu rén gěi nǐ dǎ diàn huà
Word guide: 刚才 – just now; 有 – there was; 人 – someone; 给 – to; 你 – you; 打 – make; 电话 – a phone call.

20.2.4 Position and 了

- 刚 never starts the sentence: 我刚吃饭, not 刚我吃饭. 刚才 may come first: 刚才我吃饭了.
- 刚 + verb usually has no 了: 我刚到. 刚才 sentences take 了 normally: 他刚才走了.

20.2.5 刚才 can describe a past state

- 刚才 works with adjectives and negatives: **刚才很热，现在好多了。** – “It was hot just now; now it’s much better.”
- 刚 does not: you cannot say 刚很热. Use 刚才.

刚才很热，现在好多了。
gāng cái hěn rè xiàn zài hǎo duō le
Word guide: 刚才 – just now; 很 – very; 热 – hot; 现在 – now; 好 – better; 多 – much.

20.2.6 Recap

- **刚 + Verb** = have just done (adverb, before the verb, usually no 了).
- **刚才** = a moment ago (time word, can start the sentence, works with 了, adjectives and 没).

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.3 ■ 有点 vs 一点 (a bit too... vs a little ...er)

20.3.1 Trying on shoes

- The shoes fit badly and you want to ask for another size.
- **这双鞋有点小，有大一点的吗？** – "These shoes are a bit small. Do you have a slightly bigger pair?"

20.3.2 有点 + Adj before, Adj + 一点 after

- **有点 (儿) + Adj** = "a bit (too) …", usually a complaint: 有点贵, 有点冷.
- **Adj + 一点 (儿)** = "a little more …", for comparing or asking: 便宜一点, 快一点.

今天有点冷。
jīn tiān yǒu diǎn lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 有点 – a bit; 冷 – cold.



20.3.3 Complain, then request

- Bargaining: **这个有点贵，能便宜一点吗？** – "It's a bit expensive; can you make it a little cheaper?"
- Asking for change: **你说得有点快，请说慢一点。** – "You speak a bit fast; please speak a little slower."

请说慢一点。
qǐng shuō màn yì diǎn
Word guide: 请 – please; 说 – speak; 慢 – slow; 一点 – a little.

20.3.4 Keep them on the right side

- 有点 goes before the adjective: 有点贵, not 贵有点.
- 一点 goes after the adjective: 便宜一点, not 一点便宜 (一点 before a noun means "a little of": 一点水).

20.3.5 有点 sounds negative

- 有点 + a pleasant word sounds odd: 有点漂亮 is unusual. Use 很漂亮 or 比较漂亮.
- 有点 + negative adjectives is natural: 有点累, 有点难, 有点不舒服.

我有点不舒服。
wǒ yǒu diǎn bù shū fu
Word guide: 我 – I; 有点 – a bit; 不 – not; 舒服 – well.

20.3.6 Recap

- **有点 + Adj** = a bit too … (a complaint); **Adj + 一点** = a little more … (comparison or request).
- Typical pair: 有点贵，便宜一点吧.

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.4 ■ 再 vs 又 (again: future vs past)

20.4.1 Again: done or still to come?

- You visited the Great Wall last year. This year you went again, and next year you want to go once more.
- **我今年又去了长城，明年还想再去。** – "I went to the Great Wall again this year, and I want to go again next year."

20.4.2 又 for the past, 再 for the future

- **又 + Verb + 了** = it happened again (already): 他又迟到了.
- **再 + Verb** = do it again (still to come), in plans, requests and suggestions: 请再说一遍.

请再说一遍。
qǐng zài shuō yí biàn
Word guide: 请 – please; 再 – again; 说 – say; 一遍 – once.



20.4.3 Requests and plans

- **欢迎你下次再来！** – "Come again next time!"
- **我们明天再讨论吧。** – "Let's discuss it again tomorrow." 再 can also mean "then, later".

欢迎你下次再来！
huān yíng nǐ xià cì zài lái
Word guide: 欢迎 – welcome; 你 – you; 下次 – next time; 再 – again; 来 – come.

20.4.4 Picking the right "again"

- Past repetition: 又, not 再: 他昨天又来了, not 他昨天再来了.
- Future plan or request: 再, not 又: 明天再来, not 明天又来 (unless it is a predictable repeat).

20.4.5 The exception: certain repeats

- 又 can look ahead for something sure to come round again: **明天又是周末了！** – "It's the weekend again tomorrow!"
- 还想再 / 还要再 shows a wish to repeat: 我还想再吃一碗 – "I'd like another bowl."

我还想再吃一碗。
wǒ hái xiǎng zài chī yì wǎn
Word guide: 我 – I; 还 – still; 想 – want; 再 – again; 吃 – eat; 一碗 – a bowl.

20.4.6 Recap

- **又** = again, already happened (又 + V + 了). **再** = again, still to come (plans, requests).
- 又 can look ahead only for a certain repeat (又是周末了).

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.5 ■ Practice without the models

20.5.1 才 vs 就 (late vs early)

0213.1 The train was due at ten but arrived at eleven. 火车十一点 …… 到。

0213.2 Which reports arrival as early in the completed-event model used here?

- A. 他七点到了就。
- B. 他才十点到了。
- C. 他十点才到了。
- D. 他七点就到了。

0213.3 "I asked three times before he agreed." Which word fits? 我问了三次他 _____ 同意。

- A. 又
- B. 才
- C. 就
- D. 再

0213.4 Build: "He got up as early as six."

Arrange all chunks: 他 / 就 / 起床了。/ 六点

0213.5 The meeting starts at nine. Li arrived at 8:30; Wang strolled in at 9:30. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one

detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.5.2 刚 vs 刚才 (just now: adverb vs time-word)

0214.1 Complete: “What did you say just now?” …… 你说什么?

0214.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 刚我到家。
- B. 我到家刚。
- C. 我刚到家。
- D. 刚很冷。

0214.3 刚才很忙 is correct, but 刚很忙 is not.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0214.4 Build: “Someone called you just now.”

Arrange all chunks: 刚才 / 给你 / 有人 / 打电话。

0214.5 You knock on your friend’s door; her roommate says she left a few minutes ago. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.5.3 有点 vs 一点 (a bit too... vs a little ...er)

0215.1 Complain: “The soup is a bit salty.” 汤 …… 咸。

0215.2 Ask for change: “Could you walk a little faster?”

- A. 你能一点快走吗?
- B. 你能走有点快吗?
- C. 你能走快一点吗?
- D. 你能有点快走吗?

0215.3 Build: “It’s a bit expensive; can you make it a little cheaper?”

Arrange all chunks: 能便宜 / 一点吗? / 这个有点贵 / ,

0215.4 她有点漂亮 is a natural compliment.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0215.5 The shoes fit badly and you want to ask for another size. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.5.4 再 vs 又 (again: future vs past)

0216.1 Ask politely: “Please try again.” 请 …… 试一次。

0216.2 Fill both gaps: 他上个星期 ___ 感冒了，医生说下个月 ___ 来检查。

- A. 再 … 再
- B. 又 … 又
- C. 再 … 又
- D. 又 … 再

0216.3 Build: “Come again next time!”

Arrange all chunks: 下次 / 再 / 欢迎你 / 来！

0216.4 明天又是星期五了 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0216.5 You visited the Great Wall last year. This year you went again, and next year you want to go once more. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.6 ■ Answers and explanations

20.6.1 才 vs 就 (late vs early)

0213.1 才

Eleven is later than the expected ten, so use 才.

0213.2 D. 他七点就到了。

他七点就到了 presents seven as early. 才 would express the opposite expectation; 了 is not universally banned after 才.

0213.3 B. 才

Three requests means more effort than expected, so 才.

0213.4 他六点就起床了。

Time + 就 + Verb + 了.

0213.5 One possible response: 小李八点半就到了，小王九点半才到。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 就 sentences about the past normally take 了: 他八点就到了.
- Use 他十点才到 as the simple late-arrival model. This is not a ban on 了 in every sentence containing 才.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20.6.2 刚 vs 刚才 (just now: adverb vs time-word)

0214.1 刚才

Only the time word 刚才 can start the sentence.

0214.2 C. 我刚到家。

刚 stands right before the verb; it cannot start the sentence, and it is not used for a past state like 很忙.

0214.3 True.

刚才 can describe a state a moment ago; 刚 usually goes before a verb and is not used for a past state like 很忙.

0214.4 刚才有人给你打电话。

刚才 + 有人 + 给 + person + 打电话.

0214.5 One possible response: 她刚才出去了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.

- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 刚 never starts the sentence: 我刚吃饭, not 刚我吃饭. 刚才 may come first: 刚才我吃饭了.
- 刚 + verb usually has no 了: 我刚到. 刚才 sentences take 了 normally: 他刚才走了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20.6.3 有点 vs 一点 (a bit too... vs a little ...er)

0215.1 有点

有点 + Adj for something slightly unwelcome.

0215.2 C. 你能走快一点吗?

Verb + Adj + 一点 asks for "a little more …".

0215.3 这个有点贵，能便宜一点吗?

有点 + Adj (complaint), then Adj + 一点 (request).

0215.4 False.

有点 usually goes with unwelcome qualities. Say 她很漂亮.

0215.5 One possible response: 这双鞋有点小，有大一点的吗?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 有点 goes before the adjective: 有点贵, not 贵有点.
- 一点 goes after the adjective: 便宜一点, not 一点便宜 (一点 before a noun means "a little of": 一点水).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20.6.4 再 vs 又 (again: future vs past)

0216.1 再

A request for a future repeat takes 再.

0216.2 D. 又 … 再

The cold already came back (又); the check-up is still to come (再).

0216.3 欢迎你下次再来!

Time word + 再 + verb for a future repeat.

0216.4 True.

又 can look ahead for a repeat that is certain to come.

0216.5 One possible response: 我今年又去了长城，明年还想再去。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Past repetition: 又, not 再: 他昨天又来了, not 他昨天再来了.
- Future plan or request: 再, not 又: 明天再来, not 明天又来 (unless it is a predictable repeat).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

21 Comparing similar conjunctions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

21.1 ■ 还是 vs 或者 (or: question vs statement)

21.1.1 Asking or offering?

- A waiter asks, “Rice or noodles?” You answer, “Either is fine.”
- **米饭还是面条？— 米饭或者面条都可以。** – “Rice or noodles? – Rice or noodles, either is fine.”

21.1.2 还是 asks, 或者 states

- **还是** = “or” in a question that asks someone to choose: 你喝茶还是咖啡?
- **或者** = “or” in a statement or suggestion: 你可以喝茶或者咖啡.

你可以喝茶或者咖啡。
nǐ kě yǐ hē chá huò zhě kā fēi
Word guide: 你 – you; 可以 – can; 喝 – drink; 茶 – tea; 或者 – or; 咖啡 – coffee.



21.1.3 Hidden questions

- After 不知道, 想知道 or 决定, use 还是: **我不知道他去还是不去。** – “I don’t know whether he’s going or not.”
- **我还没决定去北京还是去上海。** – “I haven’t decided whether to go to Beijing or Shanghai.”

我还没决定去北京还是去上海。

wǒ hái méi jué dìng qù Běi jīng hái shi qù Shàng hǎi
Word guide: 我 – I; 还 – still; 没 – haven't; 决定 – decided; 去 – go to; 北京 – Beijing; 还是 – or; 去 – go to; 上海 – Shanghai.

21.1.4 The quick test

- Is someone being asked to choose (even indirectly)? Use 还是. Is a possibility being offered? Use 或者.
- Never add 吗 to a 还是 question: 你去还是不去？, not 你去还是不去吗?

21.1.5 还是 = had better

- 还是 also means "had better", with no choice involved: **太晚了，我们还是回家吧。** – "It's late; we'd better go home."
- Read the context: two options to choose from, or a recommendation?

太晚了，我们还是回家吧。
tài wǎn le wǒ men hái shi huí jiā ba
Word guide: 太 – too; 晚 – late; 我们 – we; 还是 – had better; 回家 – go home.

21.1.6 Recap

- **还是** = or in direct and hidden questions (不知道 A 还是 B); **或者** = or in statements.
- 还是 + suggestion = had better.

Practise this pattern step by step.

21.2 ■ Practice without the models

21.2.1 还是 vs 或者 (or: question vs statement)

0715.1 Suggest: "We can take the bus or walk." 我们可以坐公交车 …… 走路。

0715.2 Which fits? 我不知道他是老师 _____ 学生。

- A. 和
- B. 而且
- C. 还是
- D. 或者

0715.3 Match each sentence to what 还是 / 或者 does.

- 1. 你去还是我去?
- 1. 你去或者我去都行。
- 1. 我们还是走吧。
- A. asks someone to choose
- B. had better
- C. offers either option

0715.4 你去还是不去吗? is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0715.5 A waiter asks, “Rice or noodles?” You answer, “Either is fine.” Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

21.3 ■ Answers and explanations

21.3.1 还是 vs 或者 (or: question vs statement)

0715.1 或者

A statement offering options uses 或者.

0715.2 C. 还是

After 不知道, the hidden question takes 还是.

0715.3 1–A: 你去还是我去？ = asks someone to choose; 2–C: 你去或者我去都行。= offers either option; 3–B: 我们还是走吧。= had better

还是 asks or recommends; 或者 states options.

0715.4 False.

A 还是 question takes no 吗.

0715.5 One possible response: 米饭还是面条？— 米饭或者面条都可以。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Is someone being asked to choose (even indirectly)? Use 还是. Is a possibility being offered? Use 或者.
- Never add 吗 to a 还是 question: 你去还是不去？, not 你去还是不去吗?
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

22 Comparing similar time words

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

22.1 ■ 以后 vs 然后 vs 后来 (then / after)

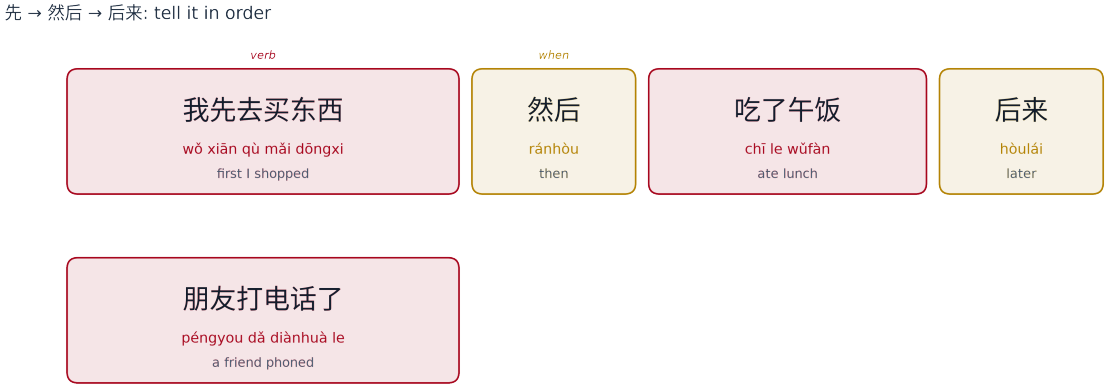
22.1.1 Telling your day in order

- You describe last Saturday: shopping, then lunch, and much later a surprise phone call.
- **我先去买东西，然后吃了午饭。后来，我的老朋友给我打电话了。** – "First I went shopping, then I had lunch. Later on, an old friend phoned me."

22.1.2 Three words for "after"

- **以后** follows an event (吃饭以后) or, alone, means "in the future" (以后再说).
- **然后** links the next step, in the past or future (先洗手，然后吃饭). **后来** jumps forward in a past story only.

先洗手，然后吃饭。
xiān xǐ shǒu rán hòu chī fàn
Word guide: 先 – first; 洗手 – wash hands; 然后 – then; 吃饭 – eat.



22.1.3 Choosing by the situation

- Plan: **我们先吃饭，然后去看电影。** – "Let's eat first, then see a film." (以后 / 然后, not 后来)
- Story: **我们是大学同学，后来结婚了。** – "We were classmates at university, and later we got married."

我们是大学同学，后来结婚了。
wǒ men shì dà xué tóng xué hòu lái jié hūn le
Word guide: 我们 – we; 是 – were; 大学 – university; 同学 – classmates; 后来 – later;

结婚 – marry.

22.1.4 Two common slips

- 后来 is never for the future: 我们以后再见, not 我们后来再见.
- 后来 is never added after an event: 下课以后, not 下课后来.

22.1.5 以后 after a clause

- **我到了以后给你打电话。** – "I'll call you after I arrive."
- 然后 cannot do this job: it starts the next clause instead: 我到了，然后给你打电话。

我到了以后给你打电话。
wǒ dào le yǐ hòu gěi nǐ dǎ diàn huà
Word guide: 我 – I; 到 – arrive; 以后 – after; 给 – to; 你 – you; 打 – make; 电话 – a call.

22.1.6 Recap

- **以后** = after X / in the future; **然后** = and then (next step, any time); **后来** = later on (past stories only).
- Plans use 然后 or 以后, never 后来.

Practise this pattern step by step.

22.2 ■ Practice without the models

22.2.1 以后 vs 然后 vs 后来 (then / after)

0517.1 A recipe: "Wash the vegetables, then cut them." 先洗菜，…… 切菜。

0517.2 Which says "See you again some time" (in the future)?

- A. 我们再见后来。
- B. 我们后来再见。
- C. 我们然后见以后。
- D. 我们以后再见。

0517.3 Match each word to its use.

- 1. 以后
- 1. 然后
- 1. 后来
- A. the next step
- B. later on in a past story
- C. after an event / in the future

0517.4 Build: "I'll call you after I arrive."

Arrange all chunks: 到了以后 / 打电话。/ 给你 / 我

0517.5 You describe last Saturday: shopping, then lunch, and much later a surprise

phone call. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

22.3 ■ Answers and explanations

22.3.1 以后 vs 然后 vs 后来 (then / after)

0517.1 然后

然后 links the next step.

0517.2 D. 我们以后再见。

后来 is only for past stories; 以后 can refer to the future.

0517.3 1–C: 以后 = after an event / in the future; 2–A: 然后 = the next step; 3–B: 后来 = later on in a past story

Each "after" word has its own job.

0517.4 我到了以后给你打电话。

Clause + 以后 + main clause.

0517.5 One possible response: 我先去买东西，然后吃了午饭。后来，我的老朋友给我打电话了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 后来 is never for the future: 我们以后再见, not 我们后来再见.
- 后来 is never added after an event: 下课以后, not 下课后来.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.